1909

First Year Latin: Preparatory to Caesar

Charles E. Bennett

Follow this and additional works at: http://digitalcommons.utep.edu/books

Part of the Ancient History, Greek and Roman through Late Antiquity Commons, and the Other Languages, Societies, and Cultures Commons

Comments:
Text in English and Latin

Recommended Citation
http://digitalcommons.utep.edu/books/3

This Book is brought to you for free and open access by the Language & Linguistics at DigitalCommons@UTEP. It has been accepted for inclusion in Books & Monographs by an authorized administrator of DigitalCommons@UTEP. For more information, please contact hweber@utep.edu.
FIRST YEAR LATIN

PREPARATORY TO CAESAR

BY

CHARLES E. BENNETT

GOLDWIN SMITH PROFESSOR OF LATIN
IN CORNELL UNIVERSITY

ALLYN AND BACON
Boston and Chicago
COPYRIGHT, 1909, BY
CHARLES E. BENNETT.

TDO

Norwood Press
J. S. Cushing Co. — Berwick & Smith Co.
Norwood, Mass., U.S.A.
PREFACE.

Most teachers will measure the value of a beginning book by the thoroughness with which it prepares for the work to be done in the second year. The work of second-year Latin in this country centres, as a rule, around the study of Caesar's Commentaries and the Latin Grammar. The present volume is intended to meet both these ends in the most successful way.

In order to prepare the pupil for the intelligent and effective study of Caesar, the vocabulary has been chosen from a limited number (about 750) of the commonest words employed by Caesar in the Gallic War. The syntax, too, has been restricted, except in the rarest instances, to that employed by Caesar. At the earliest possible point consistent with honest work, simple passages of continuous prose have been introduced, giving in outline the chief features of Caesar's campaigns against the Helvetii and Ariovistus. At the close of the Lessons, Book II of the Gallic War is given with annotation.

To prepare for the systematic study of the Latin Grammar, — the second main line of endeavor in the Latin work of the second year, — the grouping of the material throughout the book has been made to follow as nearly as possible the arrangement of all our Latin grammars. By this means the grammar work of the second year is made to involve no re-adjustment, but
becomes simply the consistent working out of the plan inaugu-
rated with the beginning book.

As regards the English-Latin Exercises which accompany
the Lessons on the declensions and conjugations, the author
believes that too much should not be expected from merely
written work on forms. In teaching inflections nothing can
take the place of incessant oral drill. It cannot be too strongly
emphasized that without thorough knowledge of the forms the
study of Latin or any other inflected language will always
drag, and will be distasteful and profitless to the student, as
well as discouraging to the teacher.

It is probably no exaggeration to assert that the chief defect
in the teaching of Latin to-day is the failure to master the
declinations and conjugations at the very outset of the study.
Honest and thorough work here is the key to the solution of
the difficulties that come later. An adequate knowledge of
the forms does not come of itself; it does not come even
by reading. It can come only by persistent, sustained atten-
tion to the forms themselves at the earliest stages of the study.
Not until the student is equipped with this fundamental
knowledge is he prepared to go on and pursue with profit and
reasonable facility the study of syntax and the intelligent
reading of a Latin author.

Ithaca, March 1, 1909.

C. E. B.
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

## PART I.

**SOUNDS. QUANTITY, ACCENT.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LESSON</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I. Alphabet. — Sounds. — Pronunciation. — Quantity. — Accent</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## PART II.

**INFLECTIONS.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>II. The Parts of Speech. — Inflection. — Nouns. — Gender. — Number</th>
<th>5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>III. Cases. — The Five Declensions</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV. First Declension</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. First Declension (continued). — Paradigm of the Present Indicative of a Verb of the First Conjugation. — Subject. — Object. — Agreement of Verb. — Genitive</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI. Second Declension</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII. Second Declension (continued). — Inflection of the Present Indicative of sum. — Predicate Nouns. — Appositives</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIII. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions. — Agreement of Adjectives. — Predicate and Attributive Adjectives</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions (continued)</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X. Nouns of the Third Declension. — Use of the Accusative and Ablative with Prepositions</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XI. Third Declension (continued)</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XII. Third Declension (continued). — Į-Stems and Mixed Stems</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIII. Third Declension (continued). — Gender</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CONTENTS.

LESSON

XIV. Fourth and Fifth Declensions ..... 30
XV. Adjectives (continued). — Nine Irregular Adjectives. — Adjectives of the Third Declension ..... 32
XVI. Adjectives of the Third Declension (continued) ..... 35
XVII. Comparison of Adjectives ..... 38
XVIII. Comparison of Adjectives (continued). — Ablative of Manner ..... 40
XIX. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs ..... 42
XX. Numerals. — Ablative of Means ..... 44
XXI. Personal, Reflexive, and Possessive Pronouns. — Dative of Indirect Object ..... 47
XXII. Demonstrative Pronouns ..... 50
XXIII. Demonstrative Pronouns (continued). — The Intensive Pronoun ..... 52
XXIV. Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns. — Agreement of Relative Pronouns ..... 55
XXV. Conjugation. — The Four Conjugations. — Principal Parts and Verb-Stems. — Conjugation of the Indicative of sum ..... 58
XXVI. Subjunctive, Imperative, Infinitive, and Participle of sum ..... 62
XXVII. Indicative Active of amò. — Verb Stems. — Reading Lesson: Gaul and its Divisions. — Biographical Note on Julius Caesar ..... 64
XXVIII. Active of amò (continued). — Verb Stems ..... 70
XXIX. Indicative Passive of amò. — Verb Stems. — Reading Lesson: Narrow Boundaries of the Helvetii ..... 73
XXX. Passive of amò (continued). — Verb Stems. — Review ..... 76
XXXI. Active Voice of moneò. — Verb Stems. — Reading Lesson: The Helvetii Decide to Emigrate ..... 79
XXXII. Passive Voice of moneò ..... 83
XXXIII. Active Voice of regò. — Reading Lesson: The Helvetii Decide to Go by Way of the Roman Province ..... 86
XXXIV. Passive Voice of regò ..... 90
XXXV. Active Voice of audiò. — Reading Lesson: Caesar Hurries to the Scene of Action ..... 93
XXXVI. Passive Voice of audiò ..... 97
## CONTENTS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lesson</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XXXVII</td>
<td>Verbs in -ō of the Third Conjugation. — Reading Lesson: Caesar Prepares to Prevent the Passage of the Helvetii</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXVIII</td>
<td>Deponent Verbs</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXIX</td>
<td>Periphrastic Conjugation. — Review. — Reading Lesson: The Helvetii Attempt to Pass through the Territory of the Sequani</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XL</td>
<td>Irregular Verbs: possum</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLI</td>
<td>Irregular Verbs (continued): dō. — Reading Lesson: Caesar Cuts to Pieces One Division of the Helvetii</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLII</td>
<td>Irregular Verbs (continued): ferō</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLIIX</td>
<td>Irregular Verbs (continued): volō, nōlō, mālō. — Reading Lesson: The Helvetii Send Envoys to Caesar</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLIV</td>
<td>Irregular Verbs (continued): fiō</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLV</td>
<td>Irregular Verbs (continued): eō. — Defective Verbs. — Reading Lesson: Continuation of the Negotiations</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLVI</td>
<td>Impersonal Verbs. — Questions. — Review</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## PART III.

### SYNTAX.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lesson</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XLVII</td>
<td>The Accusative. — Reading Lesson: Caesar Prepares for Battle</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLVIII</td>
<td>The Accusative (continued)</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLIX</td>
<td>The Dative. — Reading Lesson: Arrangement of the Roman Troops for Battle</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>The Dative (continued)</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LI</td>
<td>The Genitive. — Reading Lesson: The Battle Begins</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LII</td>
<td>The Genitive (continued). — Review</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIII</td>
<td>The Ablative. — Reading Lesson: Defeat of the Helvetii</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIV</td>
<td>The Ablative (continued)</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LV</td>
<td>The Ablative (continued). — Reading Lesson: Retreat of the Helvetii</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVI</td>
<td>The Ablative (continued): Ablative Absolute</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVII</td>
<td>The Ablative (continued). — Reading Lesson: The Helvetii Surrender to Caesar</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVIII</td>
<td>Syntax of Adjectives</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LESSON</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LXIX.</strong> Syntax of Pronouns. — Review. — Reading Lesson: Original Number of the Helvetii and their Allies. — The Survivors</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LX.</strong> The Subjunctive in Independent Sentences: Hortatory and Jussive Subjunctive</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LXI.</strong> Optative Subjunctive. — Potential Subjunctive. — The Imperative. — Reading Lesson: The Gauls Complain of Ariovistus’s Tyranny and Beg for Caesar’s Help</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LXII.</strong> Moods in Dependent Clauses. — Clauses of Purpose. — Sequence of Tenses</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LXIII.</strong> Clauses of Characteristic. — Result Clauses. — Causal Clauses. — Reading Lesson: Caesar Decides that Ariovistus and the Germans are a Menace to Roman Interests in Gaul</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LXIV.</strong> Temporal Clauses: Clauses introduced by postquam, ut, ubi, simul ac. — Cum-Claus <em>es</em></td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LXV.</strong> Temporal Clauses introduced by dum and donec. Reading Lesson: Ariovistus Rejects the Proposal for a Conference. — Caesar’s Demands</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LXVI.</strong> Substantive Clauses developed from the Volitive</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LXVII.</strong> Substantive Clauses developed from the Optative. — Substantive Clauses of Result. — Indirect Questions. — Review. — Reading Lesson: Ariovistus’s Reply to Caesar</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LXVIII.</strong> Conditional Sentences. — Clauses with quamquam and cum, ‘although’</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LXIX.</strong> Indirect Discourse. — Reading Lesson: The Germans and Romans Meet in Battle</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LXX.</strong> The Infinitive</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LXXI.</strong> Participles. — Reading Lesson: Defeat of the Germans and Flight of Ariovistus</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LXXII.</strong> The Gerund and Gerundive. — The Gerundive Construction. — The Supine. — Review</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Rules of Syntax** | 201
**Caesar’s Gallic War, Book II** | 209
**General Latin-English Vocabulary** | 247
**English-Latin Vocabulary** | 273
ILLUSTRATIONS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Illustration</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gaius Julius Caesar (British Museum)</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roman War Tower</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roman Catapult</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roman Catapult</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battering-ram</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trumpet (bucina)</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trumpet (tuba)</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperator, Legatus, Centurio, Lictor</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sword (giadius)</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roman Forum, or Public Square, in Caesar's Time</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Legionary Soldiers</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wall and Ditch (murus fossaque)</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cavalry (equites)</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard Bearers (signiferi) and Trumpeters (tubicines, cornicines)</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Helmets (galeae), Shields (scuta), and Standards (signa)</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temple of Caesar at Rome</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roman Citizen in the Toga</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bridge built by Caesar across the Rhine</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slinger (funditor)</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Testudo</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A German Body-guard</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bow, Arrow, and Javelin (arcus, sagitta, pilum)</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caesar (Capitoline Museum)</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map of Gaul</td>
<td>preceding 209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attack on a Besieged City</td>
<td>241</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ABBREVIATIONS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>ablative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>accusative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adj.</td>
<td>adjective.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adv.</td>
<td>adverb, adverbial.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c.</td>
<td>common (gender).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comp.</td>
<td>comparative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conj.</td>
<td>conjunction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>dative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decl.</td>
<td>declension.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dep.</td>
<td>deponent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e.g.</td>
<td>exempli gratia = for example.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>et cetera = and so forth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f.</td>
<td>feminine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>genitive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l.e.</td>
<td>id est = that is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impers.</td>
<td>impersonal, impersonally.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indicl.</td>
<td>indeclinable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indic.</td>
<td>indicative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inf.</td>
<td>infinitive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interrog.</td>
<td>interrogative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intr.</td>
<td>intransitive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lit.</td>
<td>literally.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m., masc.</td>
<td>masculine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n., neut.</td>
<td>neuter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>nominative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p., pp.</td>
<td>page, pages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass.</td>
<td>passive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl., plus.</td>
<td>plural.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prep.</td>
<td>preposition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pres.</td>
<td>present.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pron.</td>
<td>pronoun.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel.</td>
<td>relative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sc.</td>
<td>supply.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing.</td>
<td>singular.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sup., super.</td>
<td>superlative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tr., trans.</td>
<td>transitive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w.</td>
<td>with.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1, with verbs</td>
<td>1st conjugation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR.
(British Museum.)
PART I.

SOUNDS, QUANTITY, ACCENT.

LESSON I.

1. ALPHABET.

The Latin Alphabet is the same as the English except that the Latin has no w.

2. SOUNDS CLASSIFIED.

The Vowels are a, e, i, o, u. The other letters are Consonants. The Diphthongs are ae, oe, au, eu, ui.

3. PRONUNCIATION.¹

a) Vowels.

ä² as in father;  e as in father;
ë as in they;  i as in machine;
ö as in note;  ü as in rude;
ä as in the first syllable of ahäd;  e as in met;
i as in pin;  ë as in obey, melody;
ñ as in put.

b) Diphthongs.

ae like ai in aisle;  eu with its two elements, e and u, pronounced in rapid succession;
œ like oi in oil;  ui occurs mainly in cui and huic. These may be pronounced as though spelled kwée and wheek;
aù like ow in how;
c) Consonants.

b, d, f, h, k, l, m, n, p, qu, r, x, z, are pronounced as in English except that bs, bt are pronounced ps, pt.
c is always pronounced as k.
t is always pronounced as plain t, never with the sound of sh, as in Eng. oration.
g always as in get; when ngu precedes a vowel, gu has the sound of gw, as in anguis, languidus.
j\(^1\) has the sound of y as in yet.
s always as in sin, gas; in suādeo, suāvis, suēscō, and in compounds and derivatives of these words, su has the sound of sw.
v like w.
ph, ch, th, are to be pronounced practically like our simple p, k, t.
Doubled letters like ll, mm, tt, etc., should be pronounced with an endeavor to articulate both members of the combination distinctly.

4. QUANTITY.

A. Quantity of Vowels.

A vowel is long or short according to the length of time consumed in its pronunciation. As will be seen by comparing the sounds given in § 3, the long sounds take considerably more time to pronounce than the short ones. For example, the \(\text{i}\) of machine takes more time than the \(\text{i}\) of pin. No absolute rule can be given for determining the quantity of Latin vowels. The pupil can become familiar with them only by observing the quantity as marked in the paradigms, the vocabularies, and the exercises. Yet the following principles are of aid: —

1. A vowel is long, —

a) before \(\text{nf, ns}\), as \(\text{infāns, cōnsēnsus}\).
b) when the result of contraction; as \(\text{nīlum}\) for \(\text{nīhilum}\).

\(^1\) Some books print \(\text{i}\) instead of \(\text{j}\).
2. **A vowel is short,** —

   a) before *nt, nd*; as *amant, amandus*. A few exceptions occur in cases of compounds whose first member has a long vowel; as *nōndum* (for *nōn dum*).

   b) before another vowel or *h* \(^1\); as *meus, trahō*.

**N.B.** — Long vowels should always be *pronounced* long (that is the only thing that ‘long’ means); short vowels should be pronounced short.

### B. Quantity of Syllables.

A syllable is long or short according to *the length of time* it takes to pronounce such syllable.

1. **A syllable is long** (that is, it takes a long time to pronounce it), —

   a) if it contains a long vowel; as *māter, régnum*.

   b) if it contains a diphthong; as *causae, foedus*.

   c) if it contains a short vowel followed by *x, z, or any two consonants* (except a mute followed by *l or r*); as *axis, restat, gaza, amantis*.

2. **A syllable is regularly short** if it contains a short vowel followed by a vowel, by a single consonant, or by a mute with *l or r*; as *mea, amat, patris, volucris*.

### 5. ACCENT.

1. There are as many syllables in a Latin word as there are separate vowels and diphthongs.

2. Words of two syllables are accented upon the first; as *tēgit, mōrem*.

3. Words of more than two syllables are accented upon the penult (next to the last) if that is a long syllable, otherwise upon the antepenult (second from the last); as *amāvi, minister, miserum*.

\(^1\) *h* was pronounced so lightly as to be entirely disregarded, whether singly or in combination.

\(^2\) Such syllables are sometimes said to be long by nature.

\(^3\) The mutes are *p, c, t; b, d, g*.

\(^4\) Such syllables are sometimes said to be long by position.

\(^5\) Such syllables are sometimes said to be short by position.
EXERCISE.

Pronounce the following words, observing carefully the proper sound of each letter, and placing the accent upon the proper syllable. Remember to pronounce all long vowels long, all short vowels short.¹


¹In the division of syllables, the first consonant in a group of two or more is regularly joined with the preceding vowel; as, as-cen-dō, spectā-tus, mi-nis-trō-rum. But a single consonant or a mute with l or r (pl, bl; pr, tr, etc.) is regularly joined to the following vowel; as, vo-lu-crīs, mī-se-rat.
PART II.

INFLECTIONS.

LESSON II.

7. THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

The Parts of Speech in Latin are the same as in English; viz., Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections; but the Latin has no article.

8. INFLECTION.

Of these eight parts of speech, the first four are capable of Inflection, that is, of undergoing change of form to express modifications of meaning. In the case of Nouns, Adjectives, and Pronouns, this process is called Declension; in the case of Verbs, Conjugation.

9. NOUNS.

1. A Noun is the name of a person, place, thing, or quality: as Caesar, Caesar; Rōma, Rome; penna, feather; virtūs, courage.

2. Nouns have Gender, Number, and Case.

10. GENDER.

1. There are in Latin, as in English, three Genders: the Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.
2. Gender in Latin may be either natural (that is, based on sex, as gender always is in English) or grammatical (not based on sex).

3. Natural Gender. Nouns denoting persons have natural gender, and are Masculine, if they denote males, as nauta, sailor; Feminine, if they denote females, as māter, mother.

4. Grammatical Gender. When nouns have grammatical gender, the gender is determined:—

A. By signification. Thus:—
   a) Names of Rivers, Winds, and Months are Masculine; as, Sēquana, Seine; Eurus, East Wind; Aprīlis, April.
   b) Names of Trees, Towns, and Islands are Feminine; as, quercus, oak; Corinthus, Corinth; Rhodus, Rhodes.
   c) Indeclinable nouns are Neuter; as, nefās, wrong.

B. By ending.
   The principles for gender by ending are given later, under the five declensions.

11. NUMBER.

Latin has two Numbers, the Singular and the Plural. The Singular denotes one object; the Plural more than one.

LESSON III.

12. CASES.

1. There are six Cases in Latin:—

   Nominative, Case of Subject;
   Genitive, Objective with of, or Possessive;
   Dative, Objective with to or for;
   Accusative, Case of Direct Object;
   Vocative, Case of Address;
   Ablative, Objective with by, from, in, with.
2. **Locative.** Vestiges of another case, the **Locative** (denoting place where), occur in names of towns and in a few other words.

3. **Oblique Cases.** The Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative are called **Oblique Cases**.

4. **Formation of the Cases.** The different cases were originally formed by joining certain **case-endings** to a fundamental part called the **stem**. Thus *portam* (Accusative Singular) was formed by joining the case-ending *m* to the stem *porta-*.

   But in most cases the final vowel of the stem has united so closely with the original case-ending, that the latter has become more or less obscured. The apparent case-ending thus resulting is called a **termination**.

---

**THE FIVE DECLENSIONS.**

There are five Declensions in Latin, distinguished from each other by the final letter of the Stem, and also by the Termination of the Genitive Singular, as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Declension</th>
<th>Final Letter of Stem</th>
<th>Gen. Termination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First</td>
<td>å</td>
<td>-ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second</td>
<td>ö</td>
<td>-ï</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third</td>
<td>{l}</td>
<td>{ls}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{Some consonant}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fourth</td>
<td>ü</td>
<td>-üs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fifth</td>
<td>ę</td>
<td>-ęi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Cases alike in Form.**

1. The Vocative is like the Nominative, except in the Singular of nouns and adjectives in -us of the Second Declension.

2. The Dative and Ablative Plural are always alike.

3. In Neuters the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative are always alike, and in the Plural end in -ā.

4. In the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Declensions, the Accusative Plural is regularly like the Nominative.
LESSON IV.

FIRST DECLENSION.

14. Nouns of the First Declension end in -ā. They are Feminine, and are declined as follows:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR.</th>
<th>PLURAL.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. porta</td>
<td>a gate (subject) -ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. portae</td>
<td>of a gate -ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. portae</td>
<td>to or for a gate -ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. portam</td>
<td>a gate (object) -am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. porta</td>
<td>O gate! -ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. portā</td>
<td>with, by, from -ā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. The Latin has no article, and porta may mean either a gate or the gate; and in the Plural, gates or the gates.

15. Peculiarities of Nouns of the First Declension.

1. Exceptions in Gender. Nouns denoting males are Masculine; as, nauta, sailor; agricola, farmer.

2. Special Case-Endings,—

a) The Locative Singular ends in -ae; as, Rōmae, at Rome.

b) Dea, goddess, and filia, daughter, commonly form the Dative and Ablative Plural with the termination -ābus; as, deābus, fīliābus. This is in order to distinguish these words from the corresponding cases of deus, god, and filius, son.

16. VOCABULARY.

| agricola, ae, m., farmer. | incola, ae, m., inhabitant. |
| cōpia, ae, f., plenty; in plural, cōpiae, ārum, troops; forces. | īnsula, ae, f., island. |
| filia, ae, f., daughter. | Italia, ae, f., Italy. |
| Galba, ae, m., Galba (a man’s name). | nauta, ae, m., sailor. |
EXERCISES.


18. 1. To the farmers; of the sailor; of the inhabitants. 2. To the island; of the troops; by the troops. 3. Of a farmer; farmers (as subject); sailors (as direct object). 4. To the daughters; of the daughters. 5. To the daughter of Galba. 6. The inhabitants of the island. 7. Of the islands; to Galba; to Italy.
LESSON V.

FIRST DECLENSION (Continued).

19. Paradigm of the Present Indicative Active of a Verb of the First Conjugation.

SINGULAR.  
1. *amo*, I love.  
2. All verbs of the First Conjugation are inflected like *amo*. Such verbs are given in the General Vocabulary with the numeral I.
3. In Latin the Subject of the verb, if a personal pronoun (*I, thou, he, we, etc.*), is not expressed unless emphatic, but is implied in the verb.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>amo</em>, I love.</td>
<td><em>amāmus</em>, we love.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>amās</em>, thou lovest, you love.</td>
<td><em>amātis</em>, you love.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>amat</em>, he, she, it loves.</td>
<td><em>amant</em>, they love.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


1. The Subject of the Verb stands in the Nominative.
2. The Object of the Verb stands in the Accusative.
3. The Verb agrees with its Subject in Number and Person.
4. A Noun used to complete the meaning of another Noun is put in the Genitive: as,—

*filia agricolae*, the daughter of the farmer, or, the farmer's daughter.

21. VOCABULARY.

| accūsō, I accuse. | laudō, I praise. |
| et, conj., and. | vāstō, I lay waste. |
| incitō, I urge on, encourage. | vocō, I call, summon. |

EXERCISES.

22. 1. *Filiās agricolae* laudāmus.  
2. *Galba cópiās* incitāt.  

1 The verb in Latin ordinarily stands at the end of the sentence.
FIRST DECLENSION.

10. Filiās agricolae vocō. 11. Agricolās incitāmus.

23. 1. You\(^1\) summon the farmers. 2. We praise Galba's\(^2\) daughter.
3. Galba's daughters encourage the farmers. 4. He praises the troops.
5. The inhabitants of the island accuse Galba. 6. Galba praises the farmers.

\(^1\) Unless it is clear that the Plural is meant, you is to be regarded as the sign of the Singular.
\(^2\) I.e. the daughter of Galba.
LESSON VI.

SECOND DECLENSION.

24. Pure Latin nouns of the Second Declension end in -us, -er, -ir, Masculine; -um, Neuter; and are declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vicus, village</th>
<th>Bellum, war</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong> vicus</td>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong> bellum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong> vici</td>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong> bellii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong> viciō</td>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong> bellō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong> vicēm</td>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong> bellum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Voc.</strong> vici</td>
<td><strong>Voc.</strong> bellum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong> viciō</td>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong> bellō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Puer, boy</th>
<th>Ager, field</th>
<th>Vir, man</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong> puer</td>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong> ager</td>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong> vir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong> puerī</td>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong> agrī</td>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong> virī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong> puerō</td>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong> agrō</td>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong> virō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong> puerum</td>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong> agrum</td>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong> virum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Voc.</strong> puer</td>
<td><strong>Voc.</strong> ager</td>
<td><strong>Voc.</strong> vir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong> puerō</td>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong> agrō</td>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong> virō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Termination.**
- **-us**
- **-i**
- **-ē**
- **-ā**
- **-um**
- **-ūm**
- **-a**
- **-ā**
- **-o**
- **-ō**
- **-um**
- **-ōrum**
- **-īs**
- **-is**
- **-ī**
- **-īs**

**Wanting.**
- **-ī**
- **-ā**
- **-ō**
- **-um**
- **-ōrum**
- **-īs**
- **-ā**
- **-īs**
- **-ī**
- **-īs**
- **-īs**
VOCABULARY.

amicus, í, m., friend.
auxilium, i (ii), n., aid, help.
Belgae, ērum, m. pl., Belgians, a Gallic tribe.
Galli, ērum, m. pl., Gauls.
Germāni, ērum, m. pl., Germans.
implōrō, I entreat.
proelium, i (ii), n., battle.
Sēquanī, ērum, m. pl., Sēquani, a Gallic tribe.
vexo, I harass, annoy; ravage.
vicus, i, m., village.

EXERCISES.


28. 1. Battles; by battle; of battles. 2. To a friend; of friends. 3. The villages; to the village. 4. The troops lay waste the villages of the Gauls. 5. I entreat the help of the Germans. 6. He harasses the Gauls in battle.
LESSON VII.

SECOND DECLENSION (Continued).

29. Peculiarities of Inflection in the Second Declension.

1. Most nouns in -er in common use are declined like ager, not like puer.
2. Nouns in -ius and -ium throughout the best period of the language formed the Genitive Singular in -i (instead of -ii); as,—
   
   Nom. ingenium
   Gen. ingeni
   filius
   fill

   These Genitives accent the penult, even when it is short.
3. The Locative Singular ends in -i; as, Corinthi, at Corinth.

30. Inflection of the Present Indicative of the Verb sum.

   SINGULAR.                  PLURAL.
   sum, I am.                 sumus, we are.
   és,1 thou art, you are.    éstis,1 you are.
   ést,1 he, she, it is.      sunt, they are.


1. A Predicate Noun is one which limits its subject through the medium of the verb to be, or some similar word, as seem, become. A Predicate Noun agrees with its subject in case; as,—

   Galba est agricola, Galba is a farmer.

2. An Appositive agrees in case with the word which it explains; as,—

   Galba agricola, Galba, the farmer.

---

1 Pronounce these words, severally, és, ést, éstis, not és, ëst, ëstis.
SECOND DECLENSION.

32. VOCABULARY.

castro, őrum, n. pl., a camp.
dōnum, i, n., gift.
oppidum, i, n., town, walled town.

oppugnō, I attack, assault.
periculum, i, n., danger.
vītō, I avoid.

EXERCISES.


35. 1. Of battle; of battles; in battle. 2. To the village; of the villages. 3. The towns; of the town. 4. We are farmers. 5. We attack the towns of the Sequani. 6. He is a friend of the farmers. 7. You are friends of the Sequani. 8. You avoid the camp of the Gauls.

1 A predicate noun often follows its verb, as here.
LESSON VIII.

ADJECTIVES.

36. Adjectives denote quality. They are declined like nouns, and fall into two classes,—
1. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.
2. Adjectives of the Third Declension.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECISIONS.

In these the Masculine is declined like vīcus, puer, or ager, the Feminine like porta, and the Neuter like bellum.

37. Thus, Masculine like vīcus: —

**Bonus, good.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR.</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Masculine.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Feminine.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Neuter.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. bonus</td>
<td>bona</td>
<td>bonum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. bonī</td>
<td>bonae</td>
<td>bonī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. bonō</td>
<td>bonae</td>
<td>bonō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. bonum</td>
<td>bonam</td>
<td>bonum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. bone</td>
<td>bona</td>
<td>bonum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. bonō</td>
<td>bonā</td>
<td>bonō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLURAL.</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. bonī</td>
<td>bonae</td>
<td>bona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. bonūrūm</td>
<td>bonārūm</td>
<td>bonūrūm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. bonōs</td>
<td>bonās</td>
<td>bona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. bonī</td>
<td>bonae</td>
<td>bona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

38. Principles of Syntax.

1. An Adjective agrees with the noun which it limits in Gender, Number, and Case.
ADJECTIVES, FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS. 17

2. An Adjective limiting its noun directly is called an attributive adjective, as *agricola bonus*, a good farmer; an Adjective limiting its noun through the medium of the verb *esse*, to be, or some similar verb, is called a predicate adjective, as *agricola est bonus*, the farmer is good; *agricola videtur bonus*, the farmer seems good.

39. VOCABULARY.

jümentum, i, n., beast of burden.
magnus, a, um, large, great.
multus, a, um, much; pl., many.
numerus, i, m., number.
parvus, a, um, small.

populus, i, m., people.
Römänus, a, um, Roman;—as noun, m., a Roman.
victoria, ae, i., victory.

EXERCISES.


41. 1. Of great victories; by a great victory. 2. Many dangers; of many dangers. 3. To the Roman people; of the Roman people. 4. Many islands; many villages; many towns. 5. Of many battles; by small beasts of burden; to a large number of islands. 6. Of a small village; of the large villages; by a great battle. 7. By a small number of good beasts of burden.

The attributive adjective (see § 38, 2) in Latin, as in English, more commonly precedes the word which it limits. This is especially true of adjectives of *number, amount, etc.* Yet other adjectives when used attributively often follow the noun; see, for example, § 40, 5; 45, 2.
Lesson IX.

Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions (Continued).

42. Masculine like puer: —

Tener, tender, delicate, soft

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine.</th>
<th>Feminine.</th>
<th>Neuter.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. tener</td>
<td>tenera</td>
<td>tenerum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. teneri</td>
<td>tenerae</td>
<td>teneri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. tenerō</td>
<td>tenerae</td>
<td>tenerō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. tenerum</td>
<td>teneram</td>
<td>tenerum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. tener</td>
<td>tenera</td>
<td>tenerum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. tenerō</td>
<td>teneră</td>
<td>tenerō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

43. Masculine like ager: —

Sacer, sacred.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine.</th>
<th>Feminine.</th>
<th>Neuter.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. sacer</td>
<td>sacra</td>
<td>sacrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. sacrī</td>
<td>sacrae</td>
<td>sacrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. sacrō</td>
<td>sacrae</td>
<td>sacrō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. sacram</td>
<td>sacram</td>
<td>sacram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. sacer</td>
<td>sacra</td>
<td>sacram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. sacrō</td>
<td>sacrā</td>
<td>sacrō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine.</th>
<th>Feminine.</th>
<th>Neuter.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sacerūm</td>
<td>sacrārum</td>
<td>sacrōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sacrīs</td>
<td>sacrās</td>
<td>sacra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sacrīs</td>
<td>sacrās</td>
<td>sacra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sacrī</td>
<td>sacrae</td>
<td>sacra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sacrīs</td>
<td>sacrās</td>
<td>sacra</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. Most adjectives in -er are declined like sacer. Of adjectives in common use only the following are declined like tener: asper, rough; liber, free; miser, wretched.

VOCABULARY.

Britannia, ae, f., Britain.
dimicō, I contend.
Helvētīi, ōrum, m. pl., the Helvetii, a Celtic tribe.
lēgātus, ī, m., lieutenant.
liber, era, erum, free.
parō, I prepare, get ready.
pulcher, chra, chrum, beautiful.
suprō, I overcome.

EXERCISES.

45. 1. Filiae agricolae sunt pulchrae at bona.
2. Populus Rōmānus Gallōs superat.
4. Sēquani multīs proelīs dīmicant.
5. Britannia est magna insula.
6. Victorīa populi Rōmānī est magna.
7. Insula est parva.
8. Helvētīi magnum numerum jūmentōrum parant.
10. Multa jūmenta parātis.
12. Magnum bellum parāmus.
14. Populus Rōmānus est liber.

46. 1. We get ready many beasts of burden.
2. We praise Galba, the Roman lieutenant.
3. Many Gauls and Germans contend in battle.
4. The beasts of burden are small.
5. The Sequani and Belgians are free.
6. The villages of the Germans are many.
7. We overcome a large number of the Helvetii.
LESSON X.

NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

47. The third declension includes several distinct classes of Stems:
   I. Pure Consonant-Stems.
   II. i-Stems.
   III. Mixed Stems. (Consonant-Stems which have partially adapted themselves to the inflection of i-Stems.)

CONSONANT-STEMS.

48. Consonant-Stems are divided into Mute (p, b; t, d; c, g), Liquid (l, r), Nasal (m, n), and Spirant (s) Stems.

Mute-Stems.

49. Mute-Stems may end,—
   1. In a Labial 1 (p); as, princeps -s.
   2. In a Guttural 1 (g or c); as, rēmēx (rēmeg-s); dux (duc-s).
   3. In a Dental 1 (d or t); as, lapis (lapid-s); miles (mīlet-s).

1. STEMS IN A LABIAL MUTE (p).

50. Princeps, m., chief.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>CASE-ENDING</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th>CASE-ENDING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. princeps</td>
<td>-s</td>
<td>princēps 4</td>
<td>-ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. principis 2</td>
<td>-is</td>
<td>principum</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. principī</td>
<td>-ī</td>
<td>principibus</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. principem</td>
<td>-em</td>
<td>principēs 4</td>
<td>-ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. princeps</td>
<td>-s</td>
<td>principēs 4</td>
<td>-ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. principe 3</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>principibus</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Labials are 'lip' letters; gutturals are 'throat' letters; and dentals are 'teeth' letters.
2 Pronounce īs, not īs.
3 Pronounce ē, not ē.
4 Pronounce ēs, not ēz.
THIRD DECLENSION — CONSONANT-STEMS. 21

2. STEMS IN A GUTTURAL MUTE (g, c).

51. In these the termination -s of the Nominative Singular unites with the guttural, thus producing -x.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. rémex</td>
<td>rémigēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. rēmīgis</td>
<td>rēmīgum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. rēmīgī</td>
<td>rēmīgibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. rēmīgem</td>
<td>rēmīgēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. rēmex</td>
<td>rēmigēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. rēmige</td>
<td>rēmigibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dux, m., leader, general.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. dux</td>
<td>ducēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. ducis</td>
<td>ducum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. duci</td>
<td>ducibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. ducem</td>
<td>ducēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. dux</td>
<td>ducēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. duce</td>
<td>ducibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. STEMS IN A DENTAL MUTE (d, t).

52. In these the final d or t of the Stem disappears in the Nominative Singular before the ending -s.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. lapis</td>
<td>lapidēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. lapidis</td>
<td>lapidum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. lapidi</td>
<td>lapidibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. lapidem</td>
<td>lapidēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. lapis</td>
<td>lapidēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. lapide</td>
<td>lapidibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Miles, m., soldier.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. miles</td>
<td>militēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. militis</td>
<td>militum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. militi</td>
<td>militibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. militem</td>
<td>militēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. miles</td>
<td>militēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. milite</td>
<td>militibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

53. VOCABULARY.

confirmō, I establish.
cum, with, prep. with abl.
equestes, itis, m., horseman; pl., cavalry.
Gallia, ae, f., Gaul.
imperō, I demand.
obes, idis, m., hostage.
pax, pācis, f., peace.
virtūs, tūtis, f., valor, virtue.

54. Principle of Syntax.

Cases with Prepositions. — The Accusative and Ablative are used with Prepositions; as, ad urbem, to the city; cum cōnsule, with the consul.
EXERCISES.


57. 1. The great valor of the Roman soldiers. 2. To the chiefs, of the rowers, to the soldiers. 3. Of the cavalry, to the cavalry. 4. The general demands many hostages. 5. We establish peace with (cum)1 the chiefs and leaders of the Germans. 6. The Roman soldiers contend with (cum)1 the Helvetii. 7. You praise the leader of the rowers.

1 Unless *with* is equivalent to *by*, it is regularly to be rendered by *cum*. 
LESSON XI.

THIRD DECLENSION. — CONSONANT-STEMS (Continued).

Liquid Stems.

58. These usually end in -r; a few end in -l.

Victor, m., conqueror.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. victor</td>
<td>victŏres</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. victŏris</td>
<td>victŏrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. victŏrī</td>
<td>victŏribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. victŏrem</td>
<td>victŏres</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. victor</td>
<td>victŏres</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. victŏre</td>
<td>victŏribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Masculine and Feminine Stems ending in a liquid form the Nominative and Vocative Singular without case-ending.

Nasal Stems.

59. These end in -n, which often disappears in the Nom. Sing.

Legiō, f., legion. Nŏmen, n., name.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. legiō</td>
<td>legiōnēs</td>
<td>nŏmen</td>
<td>nŏmina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. legiōnis</td>
<td>legiōnum</td>
<td>nŏminis</td>
<td>nŏminum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. legiōnī</td>
<td>legiōnibus</td>
<td>nŏmini</td>
<td>nŏminibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. legiōnem</td>
<td>legiōnēs</td>
<td>nŏmen</td>
<td>nŏmina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. legiō</td>
<td>legiōnēs</td>
<td>nŏmen</td>
<td>nŏmina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. legiōne</td>
<td>legiōnibus</td>
<td>nŏmine</td>
<td>nŏminibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. The case-ending is lacking in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Singular of all neuters of the Third Declension.
Spirant or s-Stems.

60. Mos, m., custom. Genus, n., race. Honor, m., honor.

**Singular.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Mos</th>
<th>Genus</th>
<th>Honor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>mōs</td>
<td>genus</td>
<td>honor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>mōris</td>
<td>generis</td>
<td>honōris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>mōrī</td>
<td>generī</td>
<td>honōrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>mōrem</td>
<td>genus</td>
<td>honōrem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>mōs</td>
<td>genus</td>
<td>honor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>mōre</td>
<td>generē</td>
<td>honōre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Mōres</th>
<th>Genera</th>
<th>Honōres</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>mōres</td>
<td>genera</td>
<td>honōres</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>mōrum</td>
<td>generum</td>
<td>honōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>mōribus</td>
<td>generibus</td>
<td>honōribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>mōres</td>
<td>genera</td>
<td>honōres</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>mōres</td>
<td>genera</td>
<td>honōres</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>mōribus</td>
<td>generibus</td>
<td>honōribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Note that the final s of the stem becomes r (between vowels) in the oblique cases. In some words, as honor, the r of the oblique cases has, by analogy, crept into the Nominative, displacing the earlier s.

61. VOCABULARY.

Agger, eris, m., embankment, ram-part.

Altus, a, um, high, deep.

 Arbor, ōris, f., tree.

Caesar, āris, m., Caesar.

Consul, is, m., consul.

Flūmen, inis, n., river.

Genus, eris, n., race; kind.

In, in, on, prep. with the abl.

Mārcellus, ī, m., Marcellus.

Nōmen, inis, n., name.

Pater, tris, m., father.

Rhēnus, ī, m., the Rhine.

Silva, ae, f., forest.

Timor, ōris, m., fear.

EXERCISES.

THIRD DECLENSION. — CONSONANT-STEMS. 25


64. 1. Of a high rampart, with a high rampart. 2. To the fathers of the consuls. 3. High trees; in1 deep rivers. 4. In the river Rhine; the fear of the soldier. 5. The cavalry of Caesar harass the Gauls. 6. The rivers are deep. 7. We praise Galba, the consul. 8. The Germans attack the rampart of the Roman camp.

1To denote in a place, the preposition in is regularly necessary in Latin. The simple Ablative does not suffice.
LESSON XII.

THIRD DECLENSION. — І-STEMS AND MIXED STEMS.

І-STEMS.

1. Masculine and Feminine І-Stems.

65. Masculine and Feminine І-Stems end in -is in the Nominative Singular, and always have -ium in the Genitive Plural. They may have either -is or -ēs in the Accusative Plural. A few, like turris, have -im in the Accusative Singular, and -i in the Ablative Singular.

66. Turris, f., tower.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>Termina-</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th>Termina-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. turris</td>
<td>hostis</td>
<td>-is</td>
<td>turrēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. turris</td>
<td>hostis</td>
<td>-is</td>
<td>turrium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. turri</td>
<td>hostī</td>
<td>-ī</td>
<td>turribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. turriam</td>
<td>hostem</td>
<td>-im, -em</td>
<td>turrīs (-ēs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. turris</td>
<td>hostis</td>
<td>-is</td>
<td>turrēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. turri</td>
<td>hoste</td>
<td>-ī, -ē</td>
<td>turribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Neuter І-Stems.

67. These end in -e, -al, or -ar in the Nominative Singular. They always have -i in the Ablative Singular, -ia in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural, and -ium in the Genitive Plural.

Sedile, seat. Animal, animal.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>Termina-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. sedile</td>
<td>animal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. sedilis</td>
<td>animalis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. sedilī</td>
<td>animalī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. sedile</td>
<td>animal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. sedile</td>
<td>animal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. sedilī</td>
<td>animalī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Wanting -is
Wanting -ī
**THIRD DECLENSION.—MIXED STEMS.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>sedilia</th>
<th>Gen.</th>
<th>sedilium</th>
<th>Dat.</th>
<th>sedilibus</th>
<th>Acc.</th>
<th>sedilia</th>
<th>Voc.</th>
<th>sedilia</th>
<th>Abl.</th>
<th>sedilibus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sedilia</td>
<td>animàlia</td>
<td>sedilium</td>
<td>animàlium</td>
<td>sedilibus</td>
<td>animàlibus</td>
<td>sedilia</td>
<td>animàlia</td>
<td>sedilia</td>
<td>animàlia</td>
<td>sedilibus</td>
<td>animàlibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. In most words of this class the final -i of the stem is lost in the Nominative Singular; in others it appears as -e.

**MIXED STEMS.**

68. Mixed Stems are Consonant-Stems that have partially adapted themselves to the inflection of i-stems. They have -ium in the Genitive Plural, and -ēs or -īs in the Accusative Plural.

### SINGULAR.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom. caedes</th>
<th>arx</th>
<th>caedes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen. caedis</td>
<td>arcis</td>
<td>caedium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. caedi</td>
<td>arci</td>
<td>caedibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. caedem</td>
<td>arcem</td>
<td>caedes, -īs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. caedes</td>
<td>arx</td>
<td>caedes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. caede</td>
<td>arce</td>
<td>caedibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. The following classes of nouns belong to Mixed Stems:—

a) Nouns in -ēs, with Genitive in -is; as, nūbēs, cloud; aedes, temple, etc.

b) Many monosyllables in -s or -x preceded by one or more consonants; as, urbs, city; mōns, mountain.

c) Most nouns in -ēs and -ēs; as, cliēns, client,cohors, cohort.

69. **VOCABULARY.**

| civitās, tātis, f., state. | occupō, I take possession of, seize. |
| hostis, is, m., enemy. | paucī, ae, a, few, a few; used only in pl. |
| mare, is, n., sea. | turris, is, f., tower. |
| mēns, mentis, f., mind. | |
| mōns, montis, m., mountain. | |
EXERCISES.

70. 1. Cīvitātum, cīvitātibus. 2. Hostēs, hostīs. 3. Magna
    animālia, magnīs animālibus. 4. Montēs altī, montibus altīs.
    5. Paucae cīvitātēs, paucās cīvitātēs. 6. In turribus altīs,
    turris altās, turrium altārum. 7. Hostēs Rōmānōrum, nōmen
    montīs.

71. 1. Mīlitēs Rōmānī turrīs hostium oppugnant. 2. In
    magnō mari sunt multae insulae. 3. Multa animālia sunt in
    silvā. 4. Timor mentēs militum occupat. 5. Caesār hostēs
    proelīō superat. 6. Equitēs Rōmānī cum hostibus dīmicant.
    7. Caesār montem occupat. 8. Paucae cīvitātēs pācem cōn-
    firmant. 9. Hostēs multās turrīs occupant. 10. Cīvitātēs
    Gallōrum pācem implōrant.

72. 1. Of high towers; to the large animals; in the deep
    sea. 2. To the enemy; the camp of the enemy. 3. The
    minds of the soldiers; the forests of the mountain. 4. The
    cavalry of the enemy contend with the Romans. 5. Caesār
    establishes peace with many states. 6. We seize many
    islands of the sea. 7. There are¹ large animals on the island.

¹ There are large animals: translate as though "large animals are."

TRUMPET (tuba).
LESSON XIII.

THIRD DECENSION.—GENDER.

73. General Principles of Gender in the Third Declension.

1. Nouns in -ō, -or, -ōs, -er, -ēs are Masculine.
2. Nouns in -ās, -ēs, -is, -ys, -x, -s (preceded by a consonant); -dō, -gō (Genitive -inis); -īō (abstract and collective), -ūs (Genitive -ūtis or -ūdis) are Feminine.
3. Nouns in -a, -I, -y, -c, -l, -n, -t, -ar, -ur, -ūs are Neuter.
4. There are many exceptions to the foregoing principles.

EXERCISES.

74. 1. Fluminis altī, flūminum altōrum, flūmini altō.
3. Turris altae, turriis altās.
4. In magnīs civitātibus; parvum animal.
5. In pulchriā turri; arboris altae, arborēs altae.
6. Magnī timōris, magnī timōres.
7. Magna virtūs equitum bonōrum.

75. 1. Hostēs altās turriā Rōmanōrum oppugnant.
2. Nōmen montis est Jūra.
3. Maria magna sunt alta.
4. Ducēs Rōmānī cum principibus Sēquanōrum pācem con firmand.
5. Virtūtem ducis hostium laudātis.
6. Anīmālia paucā sunt in parvā insulā.
7. Arborēs pulchriās magnae silvae vastāmus.
8. Multa genera arborum pulchriārum sunt in agrīs.

76. 1. To the high trees; of the beautiful trees; of the beautiful tree. 2. Many kinds of virtue; fear of large animals; the name of the beautiful tower. 3. The names of a few large rivers; to the deep sea; the valor of the consul. 4. On the high ramparts; to the great leaders. 5. We praise the leaders of the enemy. 6. We call the father of the general. 7. The fear of the cavalry is great.
LESSON XIV.

THE FOURTH AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS.

FOURTH DECLENSION. — ū-STEMS.

77. Nouns of the Fourth Declension end in -us Masculine, and -ū Neuter. They are declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR.</th>
<th>PLURAL.</th>
<th>SINGULAR.</th>
<th>PLURAL.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>fructus</td>
<td>fructūs</td>
<td>cornū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>fructūs</td>
<td>fructuum</td>
<td>cornūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>fructūr</td>
<td>fructibus</td>
<td>cornū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>fructum</td>
<td>fructūs</td>
<td>cornū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>fructus</td>
<td>fructūs</td>
<td>cornū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>fructū</td>
<td>fructibus</td>
<td>cornū</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. A few nouns in -us of the Fourth Declension are Feminine, particularly manus, hand, and domus, house.

FIFTH DECLENSION. — ē-STEMS.

78. Nouns of the Fifth Declension end in -ēs, and are declined:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR.</th>
<th>PLURAL.</th>
<th>SINGULAR.</th>
<th>PLURAL.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>rēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>diēr</td>
<td>diērum</td>
<td>rēī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>diēr</td>
<td>diēbus</td>
<td>rēī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>diem</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>rem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>rēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>diē</td>
<td>diēbus</td>
<td>rē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. The ending of the Genitive and Dative Singular is -ēī, instead of -ēī, when a consonant precedes; as, spēī, rēī.

2. With the exception of diēs and rēs, most nouns of the Fifth Declension are not declined in the Plural.

3. Nouns of the Fifth Declension are regularly Feminine, except diēs, day, and merīdiēs, mid-day, which are Masculine. Even diēs is sometimes Feminine in the Singular.
FOURTH AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS.

79.

VOCABULARY.

acies, ēs, f., line of battle.

collocō, I place, arrange, station.

cornū, ūs, n., horn; in military sense, wing of an army.

dē, concerning, prep. with abl.

dexter, tra, trum, right.

dubitō, I doubt, am in doubt.

fidēs, ēs, f., fidelity, loyalty.

legiō, ōnis, f., legion.

manus, ūs, f., hand; in military sense, hand, force.

nūntiō, I announce, report.

portus, ūs, m., harbor.

reliquus, a, um, remaining.

senātus, ūs, m., senate.

spēs, spēi, f., hope.

EXERCISES.


82. 1. Of the senate; to the senate; concerning the senate. 2. In the harbors of the island; of the harbors. 3. Many hopes. 4. The remaining legions. 5. With the remaining legions Cæsar attacks the town. 6. In the harbors are many islands. 7. The senate is in doubt concerning the loyalty of the legions. 8. He announces many things to the senate.
LESSON XV.

ADJECTIVES (Continued).

NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

83. Here belong: —

alius, other, another; alter, the other;
nullus, any; nollus, none, no;
uter, which (of two)? neuter, neither (of two);
solus, alone; totus, whole;

 unus, one, alone.

They are declined as follows: —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>alius, another</th>
<th>alter, the other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>SINGULAR</strong></td>
<td><strong>SINGULAR</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASCULINE</strong></td>
<td><strong>FEMININE</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. alius</td>
<td>alia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. alterius</td>
<td>alterius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. ali</td>
<td>alii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. alium</td>
<td>aliam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. —</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. alió</td>
<td>alió</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>uter, which (of two)?</th>
<th>totus, whole</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>SINGULAR</strong></td>
<td><strong>SINGULAR</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASCULINE</strong></td>
<td><strong>FEMININE</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. uter</td>
<td>utra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. utrius</td>
<td>utrius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. utri</td>
<td>utri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. utrum</td>
<td>utram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. —</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. utrō</td>
<td>utrā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. All these words lack the Vocative.
2. The Plural is regular, and is declined like bonus.

---

1 Alius, which we should expect, is not found.
ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

84. These fall into three classes:—

1. Adjectives of three terminations in the Nominative Singular, — one for each gender.

2. Adjectives of two terminations.

3. Adjectives of one termination.

a. With the exception of Comparatives, and a few other words *(see § 91. 1)*, all Adjectives of the Third Declension follow the inflection of I-stems; i.e. they have -i in the Ablative Singular, -ium in the Genitive Plural, -is or -es in the Accusative Plural Masculine and Feminine, and -ia in the Nominative and Accusative Plural Neuter. *vetus, old.*

85. Adjectives of Three Terminations.

These are declined as follows: —

Æcer, sharp.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>SINGULAR.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. ácer</td>
<td>ácris</td>
<td>acre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. ácris</td>
<td>ácris</td>
<td>ácris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. ácri</td>
<td>ácri</td>
<td>ácri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ace. ácrem</td>
<td>ácrem</td>
<td>acre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. åcer</td>
<td>ácris</td>
<td>acre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. ácri</td>
<td>ácri</td>
<td>ácri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PLURAL.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. ácres</td>
<td>ácres</td>
<td>ácria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. ácrium</td>
<td>ácrium</td>
<td>ácrium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. ácribus</td>
<td>ácribus</td>
<td>ácribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ace. ácrēs, -īs</td>
<td>ácrēs, -īs</td>
<td>ácria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. ácres</td>
<td>ácres</td>
<td>ácria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. ácribus</td>
<td>ácribus</td>
<td>ácribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Celer, celeris, celere, swift, retains the e before r, but lacks the Genitive Plural.
ADJECTIVES.

86. VOCABULARY.

ager, agrī, m., field.
celer, eris, ere, swift.
cohors, rtis, f., cohort.
collis, is, m., hill.
conjūrō, I conspire.
dēlectō, I delight.
dōnō, I present.
equester, tris, tre, equestrian, cavalry (as an adjective).
prīnceps, cipis, m., chief.
sine, without, prep. with abl.
terra, ae, f., land.

EXERCISES.


89. 1. Of the whole cohort; whole cohorts. 2. Of another hill; other hills; on other hills. 3. Of one battle; in one battle. 4. By a cavalry battle; of cavalry battles; in cavalry battles. 5. The soldiers contend without any hope of victory. 6. The legions attack another town. 7. We avoid the dangers of another battle. 8. We are in doubt concerning many other things.
LESSON XVI.

ADJECTIVES (Continued).

90. Adjectives of Two Terminations.

Fortis, strong.

| SINGULAR | | SINGULAR |
|----------||----------|
| Nom. fortis | forte |
| Gen. fortis | fortis |
| Dat. fortī | fortī |
| Acc. forte | forte |
| Voc. fortis | forte |
| Abl. fortī | fortī |

| PLURAL | | PLURAL |
|--------||--------|
| Nom. fortēs | fortia |
| Gen. fortium | fortium |
| Dat. fortibus | fortibus |
| Acc. fortēs, is | fortia |
| Voc. fortēs | fortia |
| Abl. fortibus | fortibus |

1. Fortior is the Comparative of fortis. All Comparatives are regularly declined in the same way.

91. Adjectives of One Termination.

Ferax, fertile.

| SINGULAR | | SINGULAR |
|----------||----------|
| Nom. ferāx | ferāx |
| Gen. ferācis | ferācis |
| Dat. ferāci | ferāci |
| Acc. ferācem | ferāx |
| Voc. ferāx | ferāx |
| Abl. ferāci | ferāci |

Recēns, recent.

| SINGULAR | | SINGULAR |
|----------||----------|
| Nom. recēns | recēns |
| Gen. recentis | recentis |
| Dat. recentī | recentī |
| Acc. recentem | recentem |
| Voc. recēns | recēns |
| Abl. recentī | recentī |
ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

### PLURAL.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>ferācēs</th>
<th>ferācia</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ferāciūm</td>
<td>ferāciūm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ferācibus</td>
<td>ferācibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ferācēs, -īs</td>
<td>ferācībus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>ferācēs</td>
<td>ferācia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ferācibus</td>
<td>ferācibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Plūs, more.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR.</th>
<th>M. and F.</th>
<th>Neut.</th>
<th>M. and F.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. vetus</td>
<td>vetus</td>
<td></td>
<td>plūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. veteris</td>
<td>veteris</td>
<td></td>
<td>plūris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. veterī</td>
<td>veterī</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. veterem</td>
<td>vetus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. vetus</td>
<td>vetus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. vetere</td>
<td>vetere</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PLURAL.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom. veterēs</th>
<th>vetera</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen. veterum</td>
<td>veterum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. veteribus</td>
<td>veteribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. veterēs</td>
<td>vetera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. veterēs</td>
<td>vetera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. veteribus</td>
<td>veteribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **Fortior** and *vetus* are declined as pure Consonant-Stems; *i.e.* Ablative Singular in -e, Genitive Plural in -um, Nominative Plural Neuter in -a, and Accusative Plural Masculine and Feminine in -ēs only.

2. **Plūs**, in the Singular, is used only as a substantive.

### VOCABULARY.

| aditus, ās, m., approach. | Haedui, ĕrūm, m. pl., Haedui, a Gallic tribe. |
| adulēscēns, entĭs, m., young man. | in columna, e, unharmed. |
| communĭs, e, common. | légātus, ī, m., envoy. |
| complūrēs, ra, -ium, very many. | nāvālis, e, naval. |
| concilium, ĩ (ii), n., council. | nōbĭlis, e, noble. |
| dēliberās, I deliberate, consult. | omnis, e, all, every. |
| difficilĭs, e, difficult. | tribūnus, ī, m., tribune. |
| ferāx, gen. ferācis, fertile. | Venetĭ, ĕrūm, m. pl., Veneti, a Gallic tribe. |
| fidēs, eī, f., protection. | |
**ADJECTIVES.**

**EXERCISES.**


95. 1. In a fertile field; of fertile fields. 2. Of very many young men; with very many young men. 3. Of the common council; with noble envoys; in naval battles. 4. The young man is unharmed. 5. All the fields of the Haedui are fertile. 6. All the envoys of the Gauls entreat Caesar's help. 7. He praises all the tribunes of the legion.
LESSON XVII.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

96. 1. In Latin, as in English, there are three degrees of Comparison,—the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative.

2. The Comparative is regularly formed by adding -ior (Neut. -ius), and the Superlative by adding -issimus (-a, -um), to the Genitive Singular of the Positive deprived of its ending: —

altus, high, altior, higher, -ius altissimus, {highest, very high.
fortis, brave, fortior, -ius fortissimus.
felix, fortunate, felicior, -ius felicissimus.

3. Adjectives in -er form the Superlative by adding -rimus to the Nominative of the Positive. The Comparative is regular. Thus:—
pulcher, beautiful, pulchrior, pulcherrimus.
celer, swift, celerior, celerimus.

4. Five adjectives in -ilis form the Superlative by adding -limus to the Genitive of the Positive deprived of its ending. The Comparative is regular. Thus:—
facilis, easy, facilitor, facillimus.
difficilis, difficult, difficilior, difficillimus.
similis, like, similior, simillimus.
dissimilis, unlike, dissimilior, dissimillimus.
humilis, low, humilior, humillimus.

97. VOCABULARY.

Allobroges, um, m. pl., Allobroges, a Gallic tribe.
Avaricum, i, n., Avaricum, a Gallic town.

fortis, e, brave.
urbs, urbis, f., city.
vallis, is, f., valley.
EXERCISES.

98. 1. Urbēs pulchriōrēs, urbium pulcherrimārum, urbēs pulcherrimae. 2. In vallibus pulcherrimīs, vallium pulcherrimārum. 3. Legiōnēs fortīōrēs, legiōnum fortissimārum. 4. Aggerum altīōrum, flūmina altissima. 5. Aditū difficillimō, aditus difficiliōrēs. 6. Filiae pulchriōrēs, filiābus pulchriōribus.


100. 1. Braver soldiers; of braver soldiers; with the bravest soldiers. 2. The most difficult approaches; by the most difficult approaches; by a more difficult approach. 3. Of the braver legion; with the bravest legion. 4. The higher camp; in the highest camp. 5. Galba is the bravest leader. 6. The approaches of the valley are most beautiful.
LESSON XVIII.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (Continued)

101. Irregular Comparison.

Several Adjectives vary the Stem in Comparison; viz.,—

bonus, good, melior, optimus. magnus, large, major, maximus, -a
malus, bad, pejor, pessimus. multus, much, plus, plürimus, -a
parvus, small, minor, minimus.

102. Defective Comparison.

1. Positive lacking entirely,—

prior, former, primus, first.
terior, on this side, citimus, near.
lerior, farther, ultimus, farthest.
propior, nearer, proximus, nearest.

2. Positive occurring only in special cases,—

posterus, following, posterior, later, { postrēmus, last.
exterus, foreign, exterior, outer, { extrēmus, } outermost.
inferus, low, inferior, lower, { infimus, } lowest.
superus, high, superior, higher, { suprēmus, last.

103. VOCABULARY.

altitūdō, inis, f., depth, height.
Genava, ae, f., Geneva, a town of the Allobroges.
quattuor, indecl., four.
quīnque, indecl., five.
summus, a, um, highest, greatest
(superl. of superus).
COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. 41

Principle of Syntax.

104. Ablative of Manner. The Ablative modified by an Adjective is used to denote Manner; as, — magnā virtūte pugnant, they fight with great valor.

EXERCISES.


107. 1. Of the first legion; with the first legion. 2. The larger camp; in the smaller camp. 3. Of the greatest depth; in the farthest town. 4. The soldiers of the first legion attack the smaller camp. 5. We avoid the greatest dangers.
LESSON XIX.

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

108. Adverbs denote manner, degree, place, time, etc. They are for the most part derived from adjectives, and depend upon them for their comparison.

1. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the First and Second Declensions form the Positive by changing -i of the Genitive Singular to -ē; those derived from adjectives of the Third Declension, by changing -is of the Genitive Singular to -iter; as,

- carus, cărē, dearly;
- pulcher, pulchērē, beautifully;
- ācer, ācriter, fiercely.

a. But Adjectives in -ns change -is of the Genitive to -er to form the Adverb; as,

- sapiēns, sapienter, wisely.

Audāx forms audācter.

2. To form the Comparative of the Adverb, change -or of the Comparative of the Adjective to -us; to form the Superlative, change -us of the Superlative of the Adjective to -ē.

- (cārus) cărē, dearly, cărius, căriissimē.
- (pulcher) pulchērē, beautifully, pulchrius, pulcherrimē.
- (ācer) ācriter, fiercely, ācrius, ācerrimē.
- (audāx) audācter, boldly, audācius, audācissimē.

109. Adverbs Peculiar in Comparison and Formation.

- benē, well, mellius, optimē.
- malē, ill, pejus, pessimē.
- magnopere, greatly, magis, maximē.
ADVERBS.

multum, much,
nón multum, little,
parum, little,
saepe, often,
prope, near,
diū, long,
plús, more,
minus, less,
saeplius, more,
propius, more,
diūtius, more,
plúrimum, most,
minimé, least,
saeplissimé, most,
proximé, next,
diūtiissimé, most.

110.

111. 1. Melius, magis, minus fortiter, optimé. 2. Fortius, maximé, propius, saepissimé. 3. Diutissime, acerrimé, pejus. 4. Facilíus, minus facile, minimé facile.


113. 1. More fiercely; most fiercely; most courageously. 2. Most easily; less easily. 3. More often; greatly; in a worse way. 4. The Belgians fight more bravely than the Sequani. 5. The Romans overcome the Gauls most easily. 6. We praise the daughters very often (superlative).

1 The adverb usually stands immediately before the word it modifies.
LESSON XX.

114. NUMERALS.

1. For the declension of ūnus, one, see p. 32.
2. Duo, two, and trēs, three, are declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Duo</th>
<th>Duae</th>
<th>Duo</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>duae</td>
<td>duo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>duorum</td>
<td>duarum</td>
<td>duorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>duobus</td>
<td>duabus</td>
<td>duobus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>duōs, duo</td>
<td>duās</td>
<td>duo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>duōbus</td>
<td>duābus</td>
<td>duōbus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Trēs</th>
<th>Tria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>trēs</td>
<td>tria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>trium</td>
<td>trium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>trēs (trīs)</td>
<td>tria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. The units from four to ten, and all the tens from ten to one hundred, are indeclinable. Hundreds are declined like the plural of bonus.

4. Mīlle, thousand, is regularly an adjective in the Singular, and indeclinable. In the Plural it is a substantive (followed by the Genitive of the objects enumerated) and is declined,

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Milia</th>
<th>Milia</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>milia</td>
<td>milia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>milium</td>
<td>milium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>milibus</td>
<td>milibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>milia</td>
<td>milia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>milia</td>
<td>milia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>milibus</td>
<td>milibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples: mīlle hominēs, a thousand men; duo mīlia hominēnum, two thousand men (literally, two thousands of men).

115. VOCABULARY.

clārus, a, um, distinguished, famous.
ducenti, ae, a, two hundred.
īnstō, I press on.
quinquāgintā, indecl., fifty.
septem, indecl., seven.
trecenti, ae, a, three hundred.
Principle of Syntax.

116. Ablative of Means. The Ablative is used to denote the Means or Instrument; as,—

\[ \text{gladiis pugnant, they fight with swords.} \]

EXERCISES.


119. 1. Of three cities, in three battles, two daughters. 2. A thousand Gauls; with three thousand Germans. 3. Of one soldier; of two towns; for three villages. 4. With three hundred soldiers; of three hundred cavalry. 5. Two thousand cavalry. 6. We contend with three thousand Gauls. 7. Three hundred Romans retard the onset of a thousand Gauls.

REVIEW.

LESSON XXI.

PRONOUNS.

121. A Pronoun is a word that indicates something without naming it.

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

122. These correspond to the English I, you, he, she, it, etc., and are declined as follows:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Person</th>
<th>Second Person</th>
<th>Third Person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td>tü, thou</td>
<td>is, he; ea, she; id, it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ego, I</td>
<td>tui</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. mei</td>
<td>tibi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. mihi</td>
<td>tē</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. mē</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. —</td>
<td>tü</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. mē</td>
<td>tē</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td>vōs, you</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōs, we</td>
<td>vēstrum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. nostrum</td>
<td>nōstrī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. nōbis</td>
<td>vōbis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. nōs</td>
<td>vōs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. —</td>
<td>vōs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. nōbis</td>
<td>vōbis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

II. REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

123. These refer to the subject of the sentence or clause in which they stand; like myself, yourself, in 'I see myself,' etc. They are declined as follows:—
POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

First Person.  
Gen.  mei, of myself  
Dat. mihi, to myself  
Acc. me, myself  
Voc. ---  
Abl. me, with myself, etc.

Second Person.  
Gen. tui, of thyself  
Dat. tibi, to thyself  
Acc. te, thyself  
Voc. ---  
Abl. te, with thyself, etc.

Third Person.  
Gen. sui, of himself, herself, itself, or of themselves; and so with the other cases of sui.

1. The Reflexive of the Third Person serves for all genders and for both numbers. Thus sui may mean, of himself, herself, itself, or of themselves; and so with the other cases of sui.

124. These are strictly adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, and are inflected as such. They are:—

First Person.
meus, -a, -um, my;
noster, nostra, nostrum, our;

Second Person.
tuus, -a, -um, thy, your (of one person);
vester, vestra, vestrum, your (more than one person);

Third Person.
suus, -a, -um, his, her, its, their.

1. Suus is exclusively Reflexive; as,—
pater liberos suos amat, the father loves his children.

Otherwise, his, her, its, are regularly expressed by the Genitive Singular of is, viz. ejus; and their, by the Genitive Plural, eorum, eārum.

125.  
VOCABULARY.
ad, to,1 towards, prep. w. acc.  
amicē, in a friendly manner.  
culpō, I blame.  
Dumnorix, īgīs, m., Dumnorix, a chief of the Haedui.  
gladius, ī (ī), m., sword.  
gratūs, ā, um, pleasing, welcome.  
imperator, ōris, m., commander.  
jūdicō, I judge, adjudge.

memoria, ae, f., memory, recollection.  
officiūm, ī (ī), n., duty.  
praestō, I perform.  
probō, I approve.  
quoque, also, always placed after the word it modifies.  
verbum, ī, n., word.

1 English to is rendered by ad in Latin, if there is an idea of motion; otherwise the Dative is used.
PRONOUNS.

Principle of Syntax.

126. Dative of Indirect Object. The Dative is used to denote the Indirect Object; as, *dōna mihi dat,* he gives me presents, or, *gives presents to me.*

EXERCISES.


129. 1. Of us; to you; to himself; to themselves. 2. My father; our father; our fathers. 3. Of your friend; of your friends; to my friends. 4. We call the soldiers to us (= to ourselves). 5. No other commander blames his soldiers. 6. My daughter calls me. 7. You call your son to you (= to yourself).

---

1 The Possessive Pronouns, unless emphatic, are ordinarily placed after the noun which they limit.
LESSON XXII.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

IV. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

130. These point out an object as here or there, or as previously mentioned. They are: —

hic, this; iste, ille, is, that; idem, the same.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Masculine</strong></td>
<td><strong>Feminine</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong> hie</td>
<td>haec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong> hujus</td>
<td>hujus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong> huic</td>
<td>huic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong> hunc</td>
<td>hanc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong> hoc</td>
<td>hæc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Masculine</strong></td>
<td><strong>Feminine</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong> hie</td>
<td>hæc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong> hujus</td>
<td>hujus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong> huic</td>
<td>huic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong> hunc</td>
<td>hanc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong> hoc</td>
<td>hæc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

131. Iste, that, that of yours.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Masculine</strong></td>
<td><strong>Feminine</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong> iste</td>
<td>ista</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong> istius</td>
<td>istius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong> isti</td>
<td>isti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong> istum</td>
<td>istam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong> istö</td>
<td>ista</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Masculine</strong></td>
<td><strong>Feminine</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong> isti</td>
<td>istae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong> istorum</td>
<td>istarum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong> istis</td>
<td>istis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong> istos</td>
<td>istas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong> istis</td>
<td>istis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

132. Ille, that, that one, he, is declined like iste.
133. VOCABULARY.

cārus, a, um, dear.  
causa, ae, f., cause, condition. 
exercitus, ūs, m., army.  
ignāvus, a, um, cowardly.

opiniō, ōnis, f., opinion, expectation. 
salūs, ūtis, f., safety. 
servus, I, m., slave.

EXERCISES.


136. 1. That opinion; of those opinions; of those armies. 2. To this commander; of these commanders; of these trees. 3. That slave (of yours); of those slaves. 4. The leaders of these armies are cowardly. 5. Those duties are most difficult. 6. With all these legions Caesar attacks that town. 7. Those mountains are high.

¹ A Demonstrative Pronoun, like an adjective, agrees in Gender, Number, and Case with the noun it limits. Demonstrative Pronouns regularly precede the noun which they limit.
LESSON XXIII.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS (Continued). — THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN.

137. Is, that, this; he, she, it.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Masculine.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Nom.</em> is</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Gen.</em> ejus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Dat.</em> ei</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Acc.</em> eum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Abl.</em> eō</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Feminine.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Nom.</em> ea</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Gen.</em> ejus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Dat.</em> ei</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Acc.</em> eam</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Abl.</em> eā</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neuter.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Nom.</em> id</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Gen.</em> ejus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Dat.</em> ei</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Acc.</em> eam</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Abl.</em> eā</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Masculine.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Nom.</em> ei or iī</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Gen.</em> eōrum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Dat.</em> eis or iīs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Acc.</em> eōs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Abl.</em> eīs or iīs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Feminine.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Nom.</em> eae</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Gen.</em> eārum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Dat.</em> eīs or iīs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Acc.</em> eās</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Abl.</em> eīs or iīs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neuter.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Nom.</em> ea</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Gen.</em> eōrum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Dat.</em> eīs or iīs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Acc.</em> eās</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Abl.</em> eīs or iīs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

138. Idem, the same.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Masculine.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Nom.</em> idem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Gen.</em> ejusdem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Dat.</em> eidem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Acc.</em> eundem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Abl.</em> eōdem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Feminine.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Nom.</em> eadem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Gen.</em> ejusdem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Dat.</em> eidem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Acc.</em> eandem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Abl.</em> eōdem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neuter.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Nom.</em> idem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Gen.</em> ejusdem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Dat.</em> eidem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Acc.</em> eadem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Abl.</em> eōdem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

52
THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN.

PLURAL.

MASCULINE.

Nom. { eidem }

FEMININE.

eaedem

Neuter.

eadem

Gen. eōrundem

Dat. eisdem

Acc. eōsdem

Abl. eisdem

The Nom. Pl. Masc. also has idem, and the Dat. Abl. Pl. isdem or iisdem.

V. THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN.

139. The Intensive Pronoun in Latin is ipse. It corresponds to the English myself, etc., in 'I myself, he himself.'

SINGULAR.

MASCULINE.

Nom. ipse

FEMININE.

Neuter.

ipsa

ipsum

Gen. ipsius

ipsius

ipsi

Dat. ipsi

ipsam

ipsa

Acc. ipsum

Abl. ipsō

PLURAL.

MASCULINE.

Nom. ipsi

FEMININE.

Neuter.

ipsae

ipsa

Gen. ipsorum

ipsārum

ipsis

Dat. ipsis

ipsās

ipsis

Acc. ipsōs

Abl. ipsīs

VOCABULARY.

bene, well.

facultās, ātis, f., abundance, supply.

labor, āris, m., labor.

sex, indecl., stx.

summus, highest, greatest; sup. of superus (§ 102, 2).

EXERCISES.

141. 1. Ejusdem exercitūs, in eōdem exercitū. 2. Eae causae, dē eis causīs. 3. Eōrundem labōrum, eisdem labōri-
bus. 4. Servi ipsius, servos ipsos. 5. Eodem labore, ejusdem opinionis, earchundem portarum. 6. In eadem causae, eadem castra, eodem exercitu.


143. 1. The same causes; of the same armies, concerning the same duties. 2. That gate; of those gates. 3. Of the slave himself; concerning the slaves themselves. 4. I call him; I call her; I call them. 5. I call his father; I call their father. 6. We praise the commander himself of that army. 7. That camp is on the island itself.

1 I.e. 'the father of him,' 'the father of them.' Suus must not be used here; § 124, 1. Because suus is exclusively reflexive.

Sword (gladius).
LESSON XXIV.

RELATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, AND INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

VI. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

144. The Relative Pronoun is qui, who. It is declined: —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SINGULAR.</th>
<th></th>
<th>PLURAL.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>Neuter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>qui</td>
<td>quae</td>
<td>quae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cuijus</td>
<td>cuijus</td>
<td>quorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cui</td>
<td>cui</td>
<td>quibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>quem</td>
<td>quam</td>
<td>quod</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>quō</td>
<td>quā</td>
<td>quō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

VII. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

145. The Interrogative Pronouns are quis, who? (substantive) and qui, what? what kind of? (adjective).

1. Quis, who?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SINGULAR.</th>
<th></th>
<th>PLURAL.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>quis</td>
<td>quid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cuijus</td>
<td>cuijus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cui</td>
<td>cui</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>quem</td>
<td>quid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>quō</td>
<td>quō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Qui, what? what kind of? is declined precisely like the Relative Pronoun; viz. qui, quae, quod, etc.

VIII. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

146. These have the general force of some one, any one, as shown in the following list: —
INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

SUBSTANTIIVES.

M. AND F. Neut.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MASC.</th>
<th>FEM.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aliqua,</td>
<td>aliqua</td>
<td>aliqua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quisquam,</td>
<td>quidquam</td>
<td>quidam, quaeam, quodam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quisque,</td>
<td>quidique</td>
<td>quidam, quaeam, quodam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ADJECTIVES.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MASC.</th>
<th>FEM.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aliqua,</td>
<td>aliqua,</td>
<td>aliqua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quisque,</td>
<td>quaeque, quodque</td>
<td>quidam, quaeam, quodam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. In the Indefinite Pronouns, only the pronominal part is declined. Thus: Genitive Singular aliqua, aliqua, aliqua, etc.

2. Note that aliqua has aliqua in the Nominative Singular Feminine, also in the Nominative and Accusative Plural Neuter.

3. Quidam forms Accusative Singular quendam, quandam; Genitive Plural quorundam, quarundam; the m being changed to n before d.

147. Principle of Syntax.

Agreement of Relative Pronouns. The Relative Pronoun agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person, but its Case is determined by its construction in the clause in which it stands; as,—

mulier quam laudamus, the woman whom we praise;
oppida quae oppugnamus, the towns which we attack.

148. VOCABULARY.

armō, I arm.
dubitō, I hesitate, waver.
dux, ducis, m., leader.
erō, I err, am mistaken.
fugō, I put to flight.
hiberna, òrum, n. pl., winter-quarters.
homo, minis, m., man, human being. (3 c stem)
praedae, ae, f., booty.
si, if.
sperō, I hope, hope for; governs the acc.

EXERCISES.

servi. 4. Praeda aliqua, in proelio aliquo. 5. Homō quī-
dam, hominis cujusdam. 6. Quamque cohortem. Cūjus\(^1\)
auctōritās? In quā cīvitāte? 7. Oppidōrum quōrundam, in
oppidīs quibusdam, virō cuidoam. 8. Cuiquam, quidquam,
cujusquam. 9. Mulierēs, quās laudās. 10. Oppidum, cujus
incolās oppugnāmus. 11. Collēs, quōs occupat. 12. Amīcus,
cui gladiōm dōnō. 13. Amīcī, quibus gladiōs dōnātis.
14. Perīcula, quae vītant. 15. Čōpiae, quās proelīo vexāmus.
16. Gallī, quōrum\(^1\) auxiliōm implōrāmus. 17. Amīcus, quem
amō. 18. Agricolaē, quōrum\(^1\) filiās amāmus.

150. 1. Cohortēs quāsdam in hībernīs collocat. 2. Si
quisquam salūtem spērat, errat. 3. Dux militibus, quī oppi-
dum oppugnant, prāedam dōnāt. 4. Legiōnēs laudat quae
hostīs fugant. 5. Servōs armat quī in castrīs sunt. 6. Col-
lem quendam occupat. 7. Quis hunc hominem accusāt?
8. Caesar principēs cujusque cīvitātīs ad sē vocat. 9. Quod
oppidum oppugnātis? 10. Quae castra hī miliēs oppug-
imperātor legiōnēs culpat quae perīcula vītant.

151. 1. A certain man; of certain men; concerning cer-
tain things. 2. To each cause; some cause; some mēn.
each slave. 5. This commander arms certain legions.
6. Booty delights some soldiers. 7. What towns (do)\(^2\) the
soldiers attack? 8. They attack a certain town of the
Belgians.

\(^1\) Cūjus and quōrum (lit. of whom) are often best translated whose.

\(^2\) This word is not to be translated.
LESSON XXV.

CONJUGATION.

152. A Verb is a word which asserts something; as, est, *he is*; amat, *he loves*. The inflection of Verbs is called Conjugation.

153. Verbs have Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, Person:

1. **Two voices**, — Active and Passive.
   The Active Voice represents the subject as *acting* or *being*; as, *video*, I *see*; *sum*, I *am*. The Passive Voice represents the subject as acted upon; as, *vocāmur*, we *are called*.

   The Indicative Mood is used in stating facts, or inquiring after facts; as, *spērō*, I *hope*; *quid spērās*, what do you *hope*?
   - The force of the Subjunctive is explained in the Syntax (Part III.).
   - The Imperative is used in commands, requests, entreaties, etc.

   - But the Subjunctive lacks the Future and Future Perfect, while the Imperative employs only the Present and Future.


5. **Three Persons**, — First, Second, and Third.
154. These make up the so-called *Finite Verb*. Besides this, we have the following Noun and Adjective Forms:—

1. Noun Forms, — Infinitive, Gerund, and Supine.
2. Adjective Forms, — Participles (including the Gerundive).

155. **Transitive and Intransitive Verbs.** Verbs that take a Direct Object are Transitive Verbs; as, *te amamus*, we love you. Other verbs are Intransitive; as, *imus*, we go, *manemus*, we remain.

**THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.**

156. There are in Latin four regular Conjugations, distinguished from each other by the first vowel of the termination of the Present Infinitive Active, as follows:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONJUGATION</th>
<th>INFINITIVE TERMINATION</th>
<th>DISTINGUISHING VOWEL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>-āre</td>
<td>ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>ē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>ē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>-īre</td>
<td>Ĩ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PRINCIPAL PARTS AND VERB-STEMS.**

157. 1. **Principal Parts.** The Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and the Perfect Participle\(^1\) constitute the **Principal Parts** of a Latin verb,—so called because they contain the different stems, from which the full conjugation of the verb may be derived.

2. **Verb Stems.** Conjugation consists in adding certain endings to the different Stems of the Verb, as will be explained more fully later.

---

\(^1\) Where the Perfect Participle is not in use, the Future Active Participle, if it occurs, is given as one of the Principal Parts.
### CONJUGATION OF *sum*.

**INDICATIVE OF *sum*.

158. The irregular verb *sum* is so important for the conjugation of all other verbs that its inflection is given at the outset.

#### Principal Parts.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>sum</strong></td>
<td>esse</td>
<td><em>fui</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Present Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRES.</strong></td>
<td>sum, I am,</td>
<td>sumus, we are,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>es, thou art, you are,</td>
<td>estis, you are,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>est, he is;</td>
<td>sunt, they are.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IMPERF.</strong></td>
<td>eram, I was,</td>
<td>eramus, we were,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>eräs, thou wast, you were,</td>
<td>eratis, you were,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>erat, he was;</td>
<td>erant, they were.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUT.</strong></td>
<td>erō, I shall be,</td>
<td>erimus, we shall be,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>eris, thou wilt be, you will be,</td>
<td>eritis, you will be,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>erit, he will be;</td>
<td>erunt, they will be.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Perfect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUT.</strong></td>
<td>fui, I have been, I was;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fuisti, thou hast been, thou wast, you were,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fuit, he has been, he was;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pluperf.</strong></td>
<td>fueram, I had been,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fueräs, thou hadst been, you had been,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fuerat, he had been,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future Perfect.</strong></td>
<td>fuerō, I shall have been,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fueris, thou wilt (you will) have been,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fuerit, he will have been;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 The Perfect Participle is wanting in *sum*.

2 These two meanings are designated respectively as the **Present Perfect** (*I have been*) and the **Historical Perfect** (*I was*).
CONJUGATION OF *sum*.

159.

**VOCABULARY.**

ante, *before, in front of*, prep. with acc.

Bibulus, *I, m.*, Bibulus (*a man’s name*).

firmus, *a, um, firm, strong.*

fossa, *ae, f.*, *ditch, trench.*

ibi, *adv., there, in that place.*

inopia, *ae, f.*, *lack, need.*

nōndum, *not yet.*

quondam, *formerly.*

ubi, *where, rel. and interr. adv*

**EXERCISES.**

160. 1. Eratis, fuerat, fuistis. 2. Estis, fuerimus, fuerant.

3. Eritis, erant, fuère. 4. Fuisti, erimus, erās. 5. Fuerās, fueris, fueritis.


161. 1. Fossa erat ante oppidum. 2. Hī lēgātī in castrīs Caesaris fuerant. 3. Hae civitās quondam fuerat firmissima.


162. 1. We were; we shall be; we had been. 2. I have been; he will have been; he will be.

3. You have been; you were; they will have been. 4. I have not yet been consul. 5. These consuls were cowardly.

6. Where had your father been? 7. He had been in the camp of the enemy. 8. We have been in many towns of the Gauls. 9. Before this camp was a deep trench.
LESSON XXVI.

CONJUGATION OF *sum* (Continued)

163.

**Subjunctive.**¹

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>sim</em>, may I be,</td>
<td><em>simus</em>, let us be, may we be,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>sis</em>, be thou, mayest thou be,</td>
<td><em>sitis</em>, be ye, may you be,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>sit</em>, let him be, may he be;</td>
<td><em>sint</em>, let them be, may they be.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IMPERFECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>essem</em>, I should be,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>essēs</em>, thou wouldst be,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>esset</em>, he would be ;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PERFECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>fuerim</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fueris</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fuerit</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(The meanings of the Perfect Subjunctive must be learned in subordinate clauses.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLUPERFECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>fuissem</em>, I should have been,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fuisseās</em>, thou wouldst have been,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fuisset</em>, he would have been ;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IMPERATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>este</em>, be ye.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>estō</em>, thou shalt be,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>esse</em>, to be.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fuisse</em>, to have been.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>futūrus esse</em>,² to be about to be.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PARTICIPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>futūrus</em>,³ about to be.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ The meanings of the different tenses of the Subjunctive are so many and so varied, particularly in subordinate clauses, that no attempt can be made to give them here. For fuller information the pupil is referred to the Syntax.
² For *futūrus esse* the form *fore* is often used.
³ Decline like *bonus*, -a, -um.

To be about to be - write as *FORE*.
164. VOCABULARY.

amicitia, ae, f., friendship.
beáitus, a, um, happy.
brevis, e, short, brief.
civis, cívís, m., citizen, fellow citizen.
contentus, a, um, contented.
félix, gen. félicis, fortunate, happy.

inter, among, between, prep. with acc.
léx, légis, f., law.
perpetuus, a, um, perpetual.
puer, pueri, m., boy.
sub, under, prep. with abl.

EXERCISES.


167. 1. Let them be; I should have been; they would have been. 2. To have been; be thou; they shall be. 3. May he be; he would have been. 4. May there be friendship between you and me. 5. May we be happy. 6. Let this law be brief. 7. I should have been glad. 8. Under another leader the soldiers would have been braver.
LESSON XXVII.

FIRST (OR ã-) CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE.

Amō, I love.

**Principal Parts.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amō</td>
<td>amāre</td>
<td>amāvī</td>
<td>amātus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Indicative Mood.**

**Present Tense.**

**Singular.**

- amō, I love,
- amās, you love,
- amat, he loves;

- amābam, I was loving, I loved,
- amābās, you were loving, etc.,
- amābat, he was loving, etc.;

- amābō, I shall love,
- amābis, you will love,
- amābit, he will love;

**Plural.**

- amāmus, we love,
- amātis, you love,
- amant, they love.

**Imperfect.**

- amābāmus, we were loving, etc.,
- amābātis, you were loving, etc.,
- amābant, they were loving, etc.

**Future.**

- amābimus, we shall love,
- amābitis, you will love,
- amābunt, they will love.

**Perfect.**

- amāvīmus, we have loved, we loved,
- amāvistis, you have loved, you loved,
- amāvītis, he has loved, he loved;

**Pluperfect.**

- amāveram, I had loved,
- amāverās, you had loved,
- amāverat, he had loved;

- amāverāmus, we had loved,
- amāverātis, you had loved,
- amāverant, they had loved.

**Future Perfect.**

- amāverō, I shall have loved,
- amāverēs, you will have loved,
- amāverit, he will have loved;

- amāverimus, we shall have loved,
- amāveritis, you will have loved,
- amāverint, they will have loved.
1. **Verb Stems.** Observe that the Present, Imperfect, and Future are formed by adding the proper endings to one and the same stem, *am*-. This is called the **Present Stem.** Similarly the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect are formed from the stem *amāv*-. This is called the **Perfect Stem.**

**169. Vocabulary.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>animus</em></td>
<td>1, m., mind.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Ariovistus</em></td>
<td>i, m., Ariovistus, king of the Germans.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>classis</em></td>
<td>is, f., fleet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>cōnsilium</em></td>
<td>i (ii), n., plan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>ē, ex</em></td>
<td>from, out of, prep. with abl.; ex must be used before vowels or h.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>gēns, gentis</em></td>
<td>f., tribe, people.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>jugum</em></td>
<td>i, n., yoke; ridge (of mountains).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>litus, oris</em></td>
<td>n., shore.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>locus</em></td>
<td>i, m., place; pl. loca, örum, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>nāvis</em></td>
<td>is, f., ship, boat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>pars</em></td>
<td>partis, f., part, side.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>saepe</em></td>
<td>adv., often.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**170. Exercises.**


172. 1. I have summoned you; I was summoning you. 2. You summoned me; we shall summon you; they had summoned you. 3. We praised him; they had praised him; I was praising him. 4. The soldiers will fight; they have fought; we have fought. 5. Caesar had got ready many ships. 6. He will station two legions in that place. 7. I have not yet approved those plans. 8. Who had approved those words?

173. Gaul and its Divisions.¹

Gallia est magna terra quae inter Rhēnum flūmen et Oceanum jacet.² Hūjus terrae sunt tres partēs, quārum unam³ incolunt⁴ Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam Celtae, qui nostra lingua⁵ Gallī appellantur.⁶ Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae.

---

¹ This and the sixteen following passages of connected discourse form a continuous narrative of Caesar’s campaign against the Helvetii, as detailed in full in Caesar’s Commentaries on the Gallic War, Book I., chapters i.–xxix.

² jacet: lies; 3rd sing. pres. indic.
³ unam, aliam, tertiam: understand partem with these words.
⁴ incolunt: inhabit; 3rd plu. pres. indic.
⁵ nostra lingua: in our language; i.e. in Latin.
⁶ appellantur: are called; 3rd plu. pres. indic. pass.
Roman Forum, or Public Square, in Caesar's Time.
BIOGRAPHICAL NOTE ON JULIUS CAESAR.

The Helvetian War, which is the subject of the connected reading in this and the following lessons, was a part of the first campaign of Julius Caesar during his governorship of Gaul. This account is simplified and greatly abbreviated from the one which he wrote in his own Commentaries.

That these Commentaries should have been read for centuries in the schools seems especially fitting, since they display the literary style, the military genius, the eloquence, and the forethought of the greatest personality of Roman history.

As an introduction to the story told in the following pages, a very brief account of Caesar's life is here given.

Born of an old patrician family, Gaius Julius Caesar entered at an early age the field of politics, which was considered the fitting activity of a young Roman of high birth. In spite of his aristocratic connection, he at once recognized the strength of the popular party, and allied himself with it. Immediately his exceptional ability showed itself, and we find him at the age of fifteen the holder of an important public office, and at twenty-two the winner of the civic crown, which was conferred for military distinction. Serving the State with great credit in various offices, and neglecting no opportunity to ingratiate himself with the people, he had reached the highest magistracy of the Roman State—the consulship—at the age of forty-two.

It was at this time that he formed the famous coalition (called the First Triumvirate) with Pompey, who had won unbounded popularity by his military achievements, and Cras-
sus, the richest man in Rome. Working in concert, these three were supreme. Through the influence of his powerful allies, Caesar was appointed governor of the Roman provinces of Gaul for five years, and, upon the expiration of his term, for a second period of five years. His Commentaries belong to this time, when perhaps his plans for becoming master of Rome were quietly forming themselves. During these years not only did he conquer Gaul, but he replenished his purse, and trained the army on whose efficiency he built his fortunes.

Before the ten years of his governorship had elapsed, the death of Crassus in Parthia brought about a breach with Pompey, which widened into civil war, and ended with Caesar's triumph over his rival at Pharsalus (48 B.C.) and his elevation to the supreme power at Rome.

In this office Caesar's greatest work was done. He established beneficent governments for the provinces, corrected the calendar, and instituted numerous much needed reforms. In the height of his power, at the age of fifty-seven, he was struck down by a band of conspirators—not, however, before he had firmly laid the foundation of that great Roman Empire which was to give the world for more than two centuries a better government than any considerable part of it had ever known.
LESSON XXVIII.

ACTIVE OF amō (Continued).

174.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amem, may I love,</td>
<td>amēmus, let us love, may we love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amēs, love, may you love,</td>
<td>amētis, love, may you love,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amēt, let him love, may he love,</td>
<td>ament, let them love, may they love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amārem, I should love,</td>
<td>amāremus, we should love,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amārēs, you would love,</td>
<td>amārētis, you would love,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāret, he would love ;</td>
<td>amārent, they would love.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāverim</td>
<td>amāverīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāverīs</td>
<td>amāverītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāverīt</td>
<td>amāverint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāvissem, I should have loved,</td>
<td>amāvissēmus, we should have loved,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāvissēs, you would have loved,</td>
<td>amāvissētis, you would have loved,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāvisset, he would have loved ;</td>
<td>amāvissent, they would have loved.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Imperative.

Pres. amā, love thou ;
Fut. amātō, thou shalt love,

Infinitive.

Pres. amāre, to love.
Perf. amāvisse, to have loved.
Fut. amātūrus esse, to be about to love.

Gerund.

Gen. amandī, of loving.
Dat. amandō, for loving.
Acc. amandum, loving.
Abl. amandō, by loving.

Participle.

Pres. amāns,1 loving.

(Gen. amantis)
Fut. amātūrus, about to love.

Supine.

Acc. amātum, to love.
Abl. amātū, to love, be loved.

1 For declension of amāns, see § 91, recēns.
FIRST CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE.

1. VERB STEMS. Observe that the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, the entire Imperative, the Present Infinitive, Present Participle, and the Gerund are formed from the Present Stem. The Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive, along with the Perfect Infinitive, are formed from the Perfect Stem. The Future Participle, Future Infinitive, and the Supine are formed from a third stem amät-, known as the Participial Stem.

175.

VOCABULARY.

arma, ōrum, n. pl., arms.
bellō, I make war, carry on war.
cupidus, a, um, fond, eager.
hōra, ae, i, hour.
intrā, within, prep. with acc.
medius, a, um, middle, middle of.
multitudō, dinis, f., multitude.
nunc, now, temporal adv.
patria, ae, f., country, fatherland.
pees, itis, m., foot-soldier; in
pl., infantry.
plānitiēs, ēī, f., plain.
temptō, 1, I attempt, make trial of.
vadum, ī, n., ford.

EXERCISES.


1 Verbs of the First Conjugation are so regular that their Principal Parts are not given in full. They are indicated in the Vocabularies by the figure 1, and unless otherwise stated, their Principal Parts are regularly formed in -ō, -āre, āvi, ātus, precisely like amō.
178. 1. Let the soldiers contend; the soldiers would have contended. 2. To have contended; about to contend; by contending. 3. May he approve our words; he would have approved your words. 4. Who would have praised this man? 5. The soldiers try to seize that hill. 6. Praise all these soldiers. 7. We are about to attack another town. 8. All the Gauls are fond of fighting.
LESSON XXIX.

FIRST (OR ā-) CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE.

Amor, I am loved.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principal Parts. — amor</th>
<th>Pres. Inf.</th>
<th>-</th>
<th>Perf. Ind.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amārī</td>
<td>amātus sum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

179.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular.</th>
<th>Plural.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am loved.</td>
<td>amāmur amāminī amantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Imperfect.

| I was loved. | amābāmur amābāminī amābantur |

Future.

| I shall be loved. | amābimur amābimīnī amābuntur |

Perfect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I have been loved or I was loved.</th>
<th>amātī (-ae, -a) sumus amātī estis amātī sunt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amātus (-a, -um) sum</td>
<td>amātī erāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātus es</td>
<td>amātī erātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātus est</td>
<td>amātī erant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pluperfect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I had been loved.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amātus ēram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātus ērās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātus ērat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Future Perfect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I shall have been loved.</th>
<th>amātī erimus amātī eritis amātī erunt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amātus ērō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātus ēris</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātus ērit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FIRST CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE.

1. **Verb Stems.** Observe that the Present, Imperfect, and Future belong to the Present Stem, the remaining tenses to the Participial Stem.

180. **Vocabulary.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adventus, ús, m., arrival</td>
<td>fœstrā, adv., in vain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>centum, indecl., hundred</td>
<td>funditor, tōris, m., slinger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exspectō, 1, I expect, await</td>
<td>postridē, adv., on the next day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finitimus, a, um, neighboring</td>
<td>postulō, 1, I demand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frumentum, ī, n., grain</td>
<td>vulnerō, 1, I wound</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercises.**


183. 1. We shall be praised; we have been praised; we had been praised. 2. She was praised; she will be praised; she had been praised. 3. You are expected; you will be

---

1 Observe that in the compound tenses of the Passive the Participle agrees in Gender and Number with its subject, precisely like an adjective.
FIRST CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

expected; they will be expected. 4. Who was being praised? 5. All these towns will be attacked. 6. The Gauls had often been overcome. 7. These six ships have been got ready. 8. On the following day many soldiers were wounded.

184. Narrow Boundaries of the Helvetii.

Helvētīr quoque erant Celtae. Eōrum finēs fuērunt angustī. Undique locī nātūrā continēbantur; 1 ānā ex parte 2 flūmine Rhēnō, lātissimō 3 atque altissimō; alterā ex parte Monte Jūrā altissimō, 4 qui est inter Séquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertīā, 5 Lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō.

1 continēbantur: were hemmed in; 3rd plu. imperfect indic. pass. 2 una ex parte, altera ex parte: on one side, on the other side; literally, from one side, from the other side. 3 latissimo, altissimo: very broad, very deep; a common force of the superlative. 4 altissimo: very high. 5 tertia: understand ex parte.
LESSON XXX.

PASSIVE OF amore (Continued).

185.

Subjunctive.

Present.

May I be loved, let him be loved.

SINGULAR.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amor</td>
<td>amemur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amoris, or -re</td>
<td>amemini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amat</td>
<td>amentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Imperfect.

I should be loved, he would be loved.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amarer</td>
<td>amaremur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amare, or -re</td>
<td>amaremini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amaret</td>
<td>amarentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Perfect.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amatus sim</td>
<td>amatus esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amatus sis</td>
<td>amatus esset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amatus sit</td>
<td>amatus esset</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pluperfect.

I should have been loved, he would have been loved.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amatus essem</td>
<td>amatus esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amatus esses</td>
<td>amatus esset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amatus esset</td>
<td>amatus esset</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Imperative.

Pres. amare, be thou loved;
Fut. amator, thou shalt be loved,
                amator, he shall be loved;

Infinitive.

Pres. amari, to be loved.
Perf. amatus esse, to have been loved.
Fut. amaturn iri, to be about to be loved.

Particle.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amat, loved, having been loved.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amandus, to be loved, deserving to be loved.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FIRST CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

1. VERB STEMS. Observe that the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, the entire Imperative, the Present Infinitive, and the Gerundive belong to the Present Stem, the remaining forms to the Participial Stem. The Perfect Stem is not represented in the Passive.

186.

VOCABULARY.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>castellum</td>
<td>fort.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>convocō</td>
<td>I call together.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diligentia</td>
<td>diligence.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equus</td>
<td>horse.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excitō</td>
<td>I stir up, rouse.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>existimō</td>
<td>I think, consider.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exitium</td>
<td>(ii), destruction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expugnō</td>
<td>I take by storm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōn</td>
<td>not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>statim</td>
<td>at once, immediately.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>templum</td>
<td>temple.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vix</td>
<td>scarcely, with difficulty.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EXERCISES.


189. 1. Let them be called together; they would have been called together. 2. The senate must be (= is to be) called together at once. 3. We should easily have been overcome.
4. You would scarcely have been praised. 5. These towns would have been taken by storm most easily. 6. Your words would not have been approved. 7. The onset of the enemy must be retarded.

**REVIEW.**

LES SSON XXXI.

SECOND (OR e-) CONJUGATION. —ACTIVE VOICE.

Moneē, I advise.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>moneē</td>
<td>monēre</td>
<td>monuī</td>
<td>monitus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

191.

Indicative Mood.

PRESENT TENSE. I advise.

SINGULAR. | PLURAL.
---|---
moneē | monēmus
monēs | monētis
monet | monent

IMPERFECT. I was advising, or I advised.

monēbam | monēbāmus
monēbās | monēbātis
monēbat | monēbant

FUTURE. I shall advise.

monēbō | monēbimus
monēbis | monēbitis
monēbit | monēbunt

PERFECT. I have advised, or I advised.

monuī | monuimus
monuistī | monuistīs
monuit | monuērunt, or ēre

PLUPERFECT. I had advised.

monueram | monuerāmus
monuerās | monuerātis
monuerat | monuerant

FUTURE PERFECT. I shall have advised.

monuērō | monuērimus
monuēris | monuēritis
monuērit | monuērint

79
ACTIVE OF moneō.

192. Subjunctive.

Present. May I advise, let him advise.

Singular.
moneam
moneās
moneat

Plural.
moneāmus
moneātis
moneant

Imperfect. I should advise, he would advise.

moneārem
moneāres
moneāret

moneāmus
moneātis
moneant

Perfect.

moneārim
moneāris
moneārit

moneāmus
moneātis
moneant

Pluperfect. I should have advised, he would have advised.

moneāssēm
moneāssēs
moneāssēnt

Imperative.

Pres. mone, advise thou;
Fut. monētō, thou shalt advise,
    monētō, he shall advise;

Infinitive.

Pres. monēre, to advise.
Perf. monēisse, to have advised.
Fut. monēiturus esse, to be about
to advise.

Participle.

Pres. monēns, advising.
(Gener. monēntis.)
Fut. monēiturus, about to advise.

Gerund.

Gen. monēndī, of advising.
Dat. monēndo, for advising.
Acc. monēndum, advising.
Abl. monēndo, by advising.

Supine.

Acc. monētum, to advise.
Abl. monētā, to advise, be advised.
SECOND CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE. 81

1. **Verb Stems.** The Present, Perfect, and Participle Stems include the same moods and tenses in the Second, Third, and Fourth Conjugations as in the First.

193. **Vocabulary.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>angustus, a, um, narrow.</td>
<td>militaris, e, military.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>debeo, ere, uī, itus, I owe; with an infinitive, I ought.</td>
<td>moveo, ere, movi, motus, I move.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>debeo, ere, uī, itus, I owe; with an infinitive, I ought.</td>
<td>prohibeo, ere, uī, itus, I keep off, keep away (tr.).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deus, i, m., god.</td>
<td>signum, i, n., sign, standard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equitatus, ās, m., cavalry.</td>
<td>sustineō, ere, sustinui, I withstand.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finis, is, m., end, boundary; in pl., territory.</td>
<td>timeō, ēre, uī, I fear.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>habeō, ere, uī, itus, I have, possess.</td>
<td>video, ele, vidi, visus, I see.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maneō, ere, mansī, mansūrus, I remain.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

194. **Exercises.**


1 See p. 59, footnote.
SECOND CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE.

196. 1. We have seen you; we shall see you; he had seen you. 2. We were fearing; you had feared; he will fear. 3. To have feared, to have seen; fearing, seeing. 4. May he have; we should have had; he shall have. 5. You ought to remain in this place. 6. We had seen the standards of the enemy. 7. We should easily have kept the enemy away.

197. The Helvetii Decide to Emigrate.

Itaque e finibus suis égredi¹ et aliás sēdēs petere¹ cōstituērunt. ² Per biennium jūmenta, carrōs, frūmentum parābant; in tertium annum³ profectionem lēge confirmant. ⁴ Ubi jam parātī fuērunt, oppida sua omnia, quadringentōs vicōs, reliquaque⁵ privāta aedificia incendunt.⁶

¹ égredi, petere: to go out, to seek; pres. infs., dependent on constituerunt. ² constituerunt: they resolved; 3rd plu. perf. indic. ³ in tertium annum: for the third year. ⁴ confirmant: they set; present with the force of the perfect, a very common usage in Latin. It is called the Historical Present. ⁵ reliquaque: composed of reliqua and -que (‘and’), which is always thus attached to the word which it connects. Such words are called enclitics. ⁶ incendunt: they set fire to; 3rd plu. pres. indic.
LESSON XXXII.

SECOND (OR 8-) CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Moneor, I am advised.

Principal Parts.—moneor monēri monitus sum

198. Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

Singular.

I am advised.

moneor monēris monētur

Imperfect.

I was advised.

monēbar monēbāris, or -re monēbātur

Future.

I shall be advised.

monēbor monēberis, or -re monēbitur

Perfect.

I have been advised, I was advised.

monitus sum monitus es monitus est

Pluperfect.

I had been advised.

monitus eram monitus erās monitus erat

Future Perfect.

I shall have been advised.

monitus erō monitus eris monitus erit

88
SECOND CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

199. Subjunctive.

Present.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

Singular.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

May I be advised, let him be advised.
SECOND CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE.

200.

VOCABULARY.

admodum, quite, very much.
aequus, a, um, level.
apertus, a, um, open. [crease.
augeō, ĕre, auxi, auctus, I increase.
barbarus, a, um, barbarian; as noun, m., a barbarian.
celeriter, quickly.
compleō, ĕre, ēvi, ētus, I fill up.
contineō, ĕre, ui, I confine.

imber, imbris, m., rainstorm.
movēō, ĕre, mōvi, mōtus, I move; touch, affect.
perterreo, ĕre, ui, itus, I terrify.
suspiciō, ōnis, f., suspicion.
teneō, ĕre, ui, I hold.
vetus, gen. veteris, old.
videor, ĕri, visus sum (passive of video), be seen; seem.

EXERCISES.

201. 1. Movētur, movēbantur. 2. Perterrentur, perterrēbantur, perterritī erant. 3. Contineātur, contineābantur.
4. Videōri, visus esse, videndus. 5. Augēri, auctus esse.
6. Visus est, visae erant, visī sunt. 7. Timēre videntur, timēre vidēbātur, timēre visā est.

10. Timōrēs nostrī auctī sunt.

203. 1. We seem; he seemed; you had seemed. 2. They will be terrified; we had been terrified. 3. Your suspicions were increased.
4. The camp had been moved. 5. Our soldiers' seem to have filled up the trench of the enemy.
6. The onset of the barbarians will be bravely withstood.
7. The Gauls must be kept away.
8. These trenches would have been quickly filled up.
LEON X XXXIII.

THIRD (OR CONSONANT) CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE.

Regō, I rule.

**Principal Parts.** — regō regere rēxī rectus

PRES. IND. Pres. INF. Perf. IND. Perf. PASS. Partic

204. **Indicative Mood.**

**Present Tense.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>regō</td>
<td>regimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regis</td>
<td>regitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regit</td>
<td>regunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect.**

*I was ruling, or I ruled.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>regēbam</td>
<td>regēbāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regēbās</td>
<td>regēbātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regēbat</td>
<td>regēbant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future.**

*I shall rule.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>regam</td>
<td>regēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regēs</td>
<td>regētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reget</td>
<td>regent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect.**

*I have ruled, or I ruled.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rēxī</td>
<td>rēximus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxīstī</td>
<td>rēxīstis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxit</td>
<td>rēxīrunt, or -ēre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pluperfect.**

*I had ruled.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rēxeram</td>
<td>rēxerāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxerās</td>
<td>rēxerātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxerat</td>
<td>rēxerant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Perfect.**

*I shall have ruled.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rēxerō</td>
<td>rēxerimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxeris</td>
<td>rēxeritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxerit</td>
<td>rēxerint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

86
### Subjunctive

**Present.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>May I rule, let him rule.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regam</td>
<td>regāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regās</td>
<td>regātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regat</td>
<td>regant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect.**

I should rule, he would rule.

| regerem        | regerēmus    |
| regerēs        | regerētis    |
| regeret        | regerent     |

**Perfect.**

| rexerim        | rexerīmus    |
| rexerīs        | rexerītis    |
| rexerit        | rexerint     |

**Pluperfect.**

I should have ruled, he would have ruled.

| rexissēm       | rexissēmus   |
| rexissēs       | rexissētis   |
| rexisset       | rexissent    |

**Imperative.**

Pres. rege, rule thou;
Fut. regitō, thou shalt rule,
     regitō, he shall rule;

**Infinitive.**

Pres. regere, to rule.
Perf. rexisse, to have ruled.
Fut. rectūrus esse, to be about to rule.

**Gerund.**

Gen. regendi, of ruling.
Dat. regendō, for ruling.
Acc. regendum, ruling.
Abl. regendō, by ruling.

**Participle.**

Pres. regēns, ruling.
(Gen. regentis.)
Fut. rectūrus, about to rule.

**Supine.**

Acc. rectum, to rule.
Abl. rectū, to rule, be ruled.

1. **Verb Stems.** See § 168, 1; 174, 1.
THIRD CONJUGATION — ACTIVE VOICE.

VOCABULARY.

auxilia, ōrum, n. pl., auxiliary troops, auxiliaries.
citerior, ius, adj., nearer, hither.
committō, ere, mīst, missus, I bring together; with proelium, to join battle.
cōnstituō, ere, īū, ītus, I decide, determine.
contendō, ere, tendī, tentum, I hurry, hasten.
dēfendō, ere, fendi, fēnsus, I defend.
gerō, ere, gessī, gestus, I carry on, perform; with bellum, to wage.
hic, here, at this place.
Hispānia, ae, f., Spain.
in, into; prep. with acc.
in, on, in, prep. with abl. of place where.
instruō, ere, ēxi, ēctus, I draw up, arrange.
itēr, itineris, n., journey, march.
litterae, ārum, f., a letter.
mittō, ere, mīst, missus, I send.
omnīnō, adv., altogether; in all.
pōnō, ere, posuī, positus, I put, place, establish.
praesidium, i (ī), n., garrison.
prōvincia, ae, f., province.
reducō, ere, dūxi, ductus, I lead back.
relinquō, ere, liqui, līctus, I leave, leave behind.

EXERCISES.


1 In the case of intransitive verbs, the Perfect Passive Participle is given in the neuter form.
2 That is, Spain north of the river Ebro.
THIRD CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE.  


209. 1. We defended the city; they had defended the city; they will defend the city. 2. I sent a letter; we shall send a letter; they had sent a letter. 3. Let us defend; we should have defended; let him defend. 4. To send; to have sent. 5. I shall leave a garrison in this place. 6. Caesar sent two legions into Spain. 7. He had decided to defend the camp. 8. We waged war in Gaul.

210. The Helvetii Resolve to Go by Way of the Roman Province.

Erant omnīno itinera duo, quibus domō ēgredi poterant; unum per Sēquanos, angustum et difficile, inter Montem Jūram et Flūmen Rhodanum, vix qua singuli carri ducerentur; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius et expeditius. Hōc itinere ēgredi cōnstituērunt atque ad ripam Rhodanī omnes convēnerunt.

1 itinera: routes; nom. plu. of itier, itineris. 2 domo: from home. 3 ēgredi: to go out, as in § 197. 4 poterant: were able; 3rd plu. imperfect indic. 5 unum: understand itier. 6 vix qua singuli carri ducerentur: where carts could scarcely be drawn one by one. 7 alterum: understand itier. 8 prōvinciam nostram: our province was the name given to that part of Gaul which had been subjugated by the Romans and erected into a province in 120 B.C. It was in the southeastern part of modern France. 9 multō facilius et expeditius: much easier and more convenient; literally, easier and more convenient by much: facilius and expeditius are the nom. sing. neut. of the comparative, limiting itier understood. 10 cōnstituērunt: they resolved; as in § 197. 11 convēnerunt: they assembled; 3rd plu. perf. indic.
Lesson XXXIV.

Third Conjugation.—Passive Voice.

Regor, I am ruled.

Principal Parts.—Regor, regi, rectus sum

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>I am ruled</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Regor</td>
<td>I am ruled</td>
<td>Regimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regetis</td>
<td>Regetis</td>
<td>Regimini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regitur</td>
<td>Regitur</td>
<td>Reguntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Imperfect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I was ruled.</th>
<th>Regobamur</th>
<th>Regobaminif</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Regobaris, or -re</td>
<td>Regobaris, or -re</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regobatur</td>
<td>Regobatur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Future.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I shall be ruled.</th>
<th>Regemur</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Regeris, or -re</td>
<td>Regeminif</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regatur</td>
<td>Regentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Perfect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I have been ruled, or I was ruled.</th>
<th>Recti sumus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rectus sum</td>
<td>Recti estis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rectus est</td>
<td>Recti sunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pluperfect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I had been ruled.</th>
<th>Recti eramus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rectus eras</td>
<td>Recti eratis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rectus erat</td>
<td>Recti erant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Future Perfect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I shall have been ruled.</th>
<th>Recti erimus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rectus erod</td>
<td>Recti eritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rectus eris</td>
<td>Recti erunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rectus erit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

211.
### Subjunctive

**Present.**

*May I be ruled, let him be ruled.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>regar</td>
<td>regāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regāris, or -re</td>
<td>regāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regātur</td>
<td>regantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect.**

*I should be ruled, he would be ruled.*

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rēgerēris, or -re</td>
<td>rēgerēminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēgerētur</td>
<td>rēgerentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect.**

*I should have been ruled, he would have been ruled.*

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rectus sim</td>
<td>rectī simus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rectus sis</td>
<td>rectī sitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rectus sit</td>
<td>rectī sint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pluperfect.**

*I should have been ruled, he would have been ruled.*

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rēctus essem</td>
<td>rectī essēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēctus essēs</td>
<td>rectī essētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēctus esset</td>
<td>rectī essent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperative.**

| Pres.      | regere, be thou ruled ; | regimini, be ye ruled. |
| Fut.       | regitor, thou shalt be ruled, | reguntor, they shall be ruled. |

**Infinitive.**

| Pres. | regī, to be ruled. |
| Perf. | rectus esse, to have been ruled. |
| Fut.  | rectum irī, to be about to be ruled. |

**Participle.**

| Perf. | rectus, ruled, having been ruled. |
| Gerundive | regendus, to be ruled, deserving to be ruled. |
213. VOCABULARY.
cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus, *force, compel.
contrā, against, prep. with acc.
dēdūcō, ere, dūxī, dūctus, *lead away.
ducentī, ae, a, two hundred.
dūcō, ere, dūxī, dūctus, *lead.
expeditus, a, um, unencumbered, light-armed.
interea, adv., in the meanwhile.
instruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus, *fit out.
longus, a, um, long; nāvis longa, war-ship.
mūnitiō, ōnis, f., fortification.
quā, where.
superior, ius, higher.
trādō, ere, didī, ditus, *hand over.
tum, then, at that time.
ulterior, ius, farther.

EXERCISES.


216. 1. Hostages had been sent; hostages will be sent; hostages have been sent. 2. We shall be defended; he had been defended; she had been defended. 3. These legions have been led to the other camp. 4. A garrison has been left here. 5. You would have been compelled to remain. 6. Many wars will be waged. 7. Two legions were sent against the enemy. 8. These ships will be fitted out with all things.

¹That is, Gaul beyond the Alps.
LESSON XXXV.

FOURTH (OR i-) CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE.

Audiō, I hear.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiō</td>
<td>audire</td>
<td>audivi</td>
<td>auditus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

217.

Indicative Mood.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>I hear.</th>
<th>PLURAL.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiō</td>
<td>I hear.</td>
<td>audiōmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīs</td>
<td></td>
<td>audītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit</td>
<td></td>
<td>audiiunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IMPERFECT.

I was hearing, or I heard.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>I was hearing, or I heard.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiēbam</td>
<td>audiēbāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbās</td>
<td>audiēbātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbat</td>
<td>audiēbant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

FUTURE.

I shall hear.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>I shall hear.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiam</td>
<td>audiēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīēs</td>
<td>audiētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīet</td>
<td>audiient</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PERFECT.

I have heard, or I heard.

PUPERFECT.

I had heard.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>I had heard.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audīvi</td>
<td>audivimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivistī</td>
<td>audivistis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivit</td>
<td>audivērunt, or -ēre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have heard.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>I shall have heard.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiverāmus</td>
<td>audiverīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiverātis</td>
<td>audiverītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiverant</td>
<td>audiverint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ACTIVE OF audiō.

218.

Subjunctive.

Present.

May I hear, let him hear.

SINGULAR.

audiam
audīās
audīat

PLURAL.

audiāmus
audiātis
audiānt

IMPERFECT.

I should hear, he would hear.

audīrem
audīrēs
audīret

PERFECT.

audīverim
audīveris
audīverit

I should have heard, he would have heard.

audīvissem
audīvissēs
audīvisset

PLUPERFECT.

audīisse
audīssēs
audīssisset

Imparative.

Pres. audi, hear thou;
Fut. audītō, thou shalt hear;

audītō, he shall hear;

Infinitive.

Pres. audiēre, to hear.
Perf. audīvisse, to have heard.
Fut. audītūrus esse, to be about to hear.

Participle

Pres. audiēns, hearing.
(Gen. audiēntis.)
Fut. audītūrus, about to hear.

Gerund.

Gen. audiēndī, of hearing.
Dat. audiēndō, for hearing.
Acc. audiēndum, hearing.
Abl. audiēndō, by hearing.

Supine.

Acc. audītum, to hear.
Abl. audiētū, to hear, be heard.

1. VERB STEMS. See § 168, 1; 174, 1.
FOURTH CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE.

219.

agmen, minis, n., army (on the march); column.
antea, previously, before.
convenio, ire, veni, ventum, come together.
eodem, adv., to the same place.
fama, ae, f., report.
feré, almost, about, practically.
impedió, ire, ivi (ii), itus, I impede, hinder.
mora, ae, f., delay.

VOCABULARY.
munió, ire, ivi, itus, I fortify.
nuntius, i (ii), m., messenger.
occásió, ãnis, i., occasion, opportunity.
postea, afterwards.
reperió, ire, repperí, repertus, I discover.
undique, adv., from all parts or sides.
venió, ire, veni, ventum, I come.

EXERCISES.

220. 1. Venerat, veniet, veniat. 2. Repperimus, reppereramus.

221. 1. Caesar reliquás cópiás quae nőndum convenérant exspectábat. 2. LégátI feré tótius Galliae undique conveniunt.
13. Reliquás legiōnes, quae impedítae erant, exspectábāmus.

222. 1. We were fortifying; we have fortified; they will fortify. 2. They were assembling; they have assembled; they would have assembled. 3. He came; he will have come; let him come. 4. Fortify this camp, soldiers! ¹

¹The Vocative ordinarily stands second in the sentence.
5. The enemy hindered the march of our army! 6. The Germans assembled on all sides from the forests. 7. We have heard the report of that battle. 8. I afterwards discovered these things.

223. Caesar Hurries to the Scene of Action.

Ubi Caesar haec audīvit, mātūrāvit ab urbe proficiscī et maximīs itineribus in Galliam Ulteriorem contendit et ad Genavam pervēnit. Prōvinciae totī maximum numerum mīlitum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā Ulteriore legiō ūna); pontem, quī erat ad Genavam, jubet rescindī. Ad eum Helvētiī légātōs mittunt, nōbilissimōs civitātis, cūjus légatiōnis Nammeius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant.

1 Use agmen, minis, n.  2 haec: these things; acc. plu. neut.  3 proficisci: to set out; pres. inf.  4 maximis itineribus: by forced stages; literally, by the greatest journeys.  5 Galliam Ulteriorem: Farther Gaul; i.e. Gaul beyond the Alps.  6 ad Genavam: to the vicinity of Geneva.  7 provinciae toti imperat: he levied on the whole province; literally, to the whole province.  8 ad Genavam: near Geneva.  9 cūjus legationis: on which legation; literally, of which, etc.
LESSON XXXVI.

FOURTH CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE.

Audior, I am heard.

Principal Parts. — audior

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

SingulAr.

I am heard.

Plural.

audīr

audīrīs

auditur

Imperfect.

I was heard.

audiēbar

audiēbāris, or -re

audiēbātur

Future.

I shall be heard.

audiēr

audiēris, or -re

audiētur

Perfect.

I have been heard, or I was heard.

auditūs sum

auditūs es

auditūs est

Pluperfect.

I had been heard.

auditūs eram

auditūs erās

auditūs erat

Future Perfect.

I shall have been heard.

auditūs erē

auditūs eris

auditūs erit
FOURTH CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE.

225.

Subjunctive.

Present.

May I be heard, let him be heard.

\^\text{Singular.} & \text{Plural.} \\
\text{audiar} & \text{audiāmur} \\
\text{audiāris, or -re} & \text{audiāminī} \\
\text{audiātur} & \text{audiāntur} \\

Imperfect.

I should be heard, he would be heard.

\text{audīrer} & \text{audīrēmur} \\
\text{audīrēris, or -re} & \text{audīrēminī} \\
\text{audīrētur} & \text{audīrentur} \\

Perfect.

I should have been heard, he would have been heard.

\text{auditūs sim} & \text{auditī sīmus} \\
\text{auditūs sīs} & \text{auditī sītis} \\
\text{auditūs sit} & \text{auditī sint} \\

Pluperfect.

\text{auditūs essem} & \text{auditī essēmus} \\
\text{auditūs essēs} & \text{auditī essētis} \\
\text{auditūs esset} & \text{auditī essent} \\

Imperative.

\text{Pres.} \text{audīre, be thou heard;} & \text{audīminī, be ye heard.} \\
\text{Fut.} \text{audītor, thou shalt be heard,} & \text{audīuntor, they shall be heard.} \\
\text{audītor, he shall be heard;} & \text{audītor, he shall be heard;} \\

Infinitive.

\text{Pres.} \text{audīrī, to be heard.} & \text{Participle.} \\
\text{Perf.} \text{auditūs esse, to have been heard.} & \text{auditūs, heard, having been heard.} \\
\text{Fut.} \text{auditūm ērī, to be about to be heard.} & \text{Gerundive auditūndīs, to be heard, deserving to be heard.}
FOURTH CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

226.

VOCABULARY.

angustiae, ärum, f. pl., a narrow 
pass.
aqua, ae, f., water.
captivus, i, m., captive.
circumvenió, ire, véní, ventus,
I surround.
extră, outside, beyond, prep. with 
acc.
idóneus, a, um, suitable.
invenió, ire, véní, ventus, I find,
come upon.
nátūra, ae, f., nature.
nihil, indecl. n., nothing.
opus, operis, n., work, fortifica-
tion.
paene, almost, nearly.
poena, ae, f., punishment.
prōcurrō, ece, cucurri, cursum,
I run forward.
regió, önis, f., region.
simul, together, at the same time.
témere, rashly.
vōx, vōcis, f., voice, word.

EXERCISES.

227. 1. Inveniitur, inventus erat. 2. Impedimur, impedie-
bátur, impediri. 3. Impeèitus, impediti eramus. 4. Inven-
tus esse, inveniendus. 5. Inveniētur, inventī erunt, inventus 
esset. 6. Urbs muniētur, urbs mūnīta erat, urbs mūnitur.
7. Urbēs muniēbantur, urbēs mūnītæ sunt, urbēs mūniantur.
8. Circumvenīmur, circumventus est, circumventus esset, cir-
cumveniendus. 9. Reperiētur, repertus esse, repertus, 
reperti sunt.

228. 1. Locus idóneus, nátūra mūnītus, repertus est. 2. Nihil dē poenā captivōrum auditum erat. 3. Peditēs
nostri altitūdine aquae impediebantur. 4. Angustiōs impediē-
mur. 5. Castra magnīs operibus mūnīta sunt. 6. Vōcēs
militum simul auditabantur. 7. Magna copia frumentī in hīs
regiōnibus inventa est. 8. Una cohors, quae temere extrā
aciem prōcucurrerat, paene circumventa est. 9. Nihil reperiē-
tur. 10. Castra majōra munienda sunt. 11. Altēe arborēs
in hāc silvā inventae sunt. 12. Illud oppidum altā fossā
circumventum est. 13. Multae vōcēs in castrīs auditae
sunt.
100  **FOURTH CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE.**

229. 1. We were surrounded; they had been surrounded; they will be surrounded. 2. He was heard; we had been heard; she will be heard. 3. Let him be heard; they would have been heard; to be heard. 4. These captives were surrounded with two cohorts of soldiers. 5. Nothing has been discovered. 6. No other voice will be heard. 7. The larger camp ought to be fortified.

![Cavalry (equites)](image-url)
LESSON XXXVII.

VERBS IN -io OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

230. 1. Verbs in -io of the Third Conjugation take the endings of the Fourth Conjugation, wherever the latter endings have two successive vowels. This occurs only in the Present System (§ 168, 1; § 174, 1).

231. ACTIVE VOICE.—Capiō, I take.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiō,</td>
<td>capere,</td>
<td>cēpi,</td>
<td>captus.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR.</th>
<th>PLURAL.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiō, capis, capit;</td>
<td>capimus, capitis, capiunt.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Imperfect.

capiēbam, -iēbās, -iēbat; capiēbāmus, -iēbātis, -iēbant.

Future.

capiam, -iēs, -iēt; capiēmus, -iētis, -iēnt.

Perfect.

cēpi, -istī, -it; cēpimus, -istis, -érunt, or -ēre.

Pluperfect.

cēperam, -erās, -erat; cēperāmus, -erātis, -erant.

Future Perfect.

cēperō, -eris, -erit; cēperimus, -eritis, -erint.
## Subjunctive.

### Present.
- **Singular:** capiam, -iäs, -iät;
- **Plural:** capiamus, -iātis, -iānt.

### Imperfect.
- **Singular:** caperem, -erēs, -erēt;
- **Plural:** caperēmus, -erētis, -erēnt.

### Perfect.
- **Singular:** ceperim, -erēs, -erēt;
- **Plural:** ceperimus, -erētis, -erēnt.

### Pluperfect.
- **Singular:** cepissem, -issēs, -isset;
- **Plural:** cepissēmus, -issētis, -isset.

### Imperative.
- **Present:** capite;
- **Futurum:** capitō; capīto.

### Infinitive.
- **Present:** capere.
- **Perfect:** cepisse.
- **Futurum:** captūrus esse.

### Gerund.
- **Genitive:** capiendī.
- **Dative:** capiendō.
- **Accusative:** capiendum.
- **Ablative:** capiendō.

### Supine.
- **Accusative:** captum.
- **Ablative:** captū.

---

## Passive Voice.

### Principal Parts.
- **Present Indicative:** capiō, capiris, capitur;
- **Perfect Indicative:** capītus sum.

### Indicative Mood.

#### Present Tense.
- capiō, caperis, capitur;
- capimur, capimini, capiuntur.

#### Imperfect.
- capiēbar, -iēbāris, -iēbātur;
- capiēbāmur, -iēbāmini, -iēbāntur
VERBS IN -io OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION. 103

**Future.**

**Singular.**
capiar, -iēris, -iētūr;

**Perfect.**
captus sum, es, est;

**Future Perfect.**
captus erō, eris, erit;

**Subjunctive.**

**Present.**
capiar, -iāris, -iātūr;

**Imperfect.**
caperēr, -erēris, -erētūr;

**Perfect.**
captus sim, sis, sit;

**Pluperfect.**
captus essem, essēs, esset;

**Imperative.**

Pres. capere;
Fut. capitor, capitor;

**Infinitive.**

Pres. capi.
Perf. captus esse.
Fut. captum īri.

**Participle.**

Perf. captus.
Gerundive capiendus.
VERBS IN -io OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

233. VOCABULARY.

acci pièō, ere, cēpi, cepit, cepus, I receive.
capiō, ere, cēpi, captus, I take, adopt; capture.
diripīō, ere, ripūi, reptus, I plunder.
faciō, ere, fēci, factus, I make, do; passive irregular; see §275.
filius, i (ii), m., son.
fugīō, ere, fugī, fugitūrus, I flee.
interficiō, ere, fēci, factus, I kill.
libertās, tātis, f., liberty.
majōreś, um, m. pl., ancestors.
mandātum, i, n., command, order.
nātiō, ōnis, f., nation, tribe.
palūs, lūdis, f., marsh.
pōns, pontis, m., bridge.
rēx, rēgis, m., king.
rūrsus, again.
subītō, suddenly.
supplēcium, i (ii), n., torture, punishment.

EXERCISES.


236. 1. We were taking; I had taken; they will take. 2. Let us take; let him take; taking. 3. They would have fled; he would have been killed. 4. They will be killed; they were killed. 5. Let us make a bridge! 6. This camp
was plundered. 7. The envoys of the king were received. 8. We received your commands. 9. We shall flee from these dangers.

237. Caesar Prepares to Prevent the Passage of the Helvetii.

Caesar autem eis nihil pollicitus est. Légátos ad Idus Aprilis ad sé reverti jussit. Interea eā legiōne quam sécum habēbat mīlitibusque quī ex prōvin-ciā convēnerant, ā Lacō Lemanno (quī in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit) ad Montem Jūram (quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit) mīlia passuum undē vigintī mūrum fossamque perdūcit. Ibi praesidia dispōnit et castella commūnit.

1 pollicitus est: promised. 2 ad Idus Aprilis: on the Ides of April; literally, at the Ides of April (April 13th). 3 reverti: to return, infinitive. 4 ea legione: with that legion; limiting perdūcit in line 6. 5 secum: with him; literally with himself; the preposition cum is regularly appended to the personal and reflexive pronouns. 6 milia passuum undē vigintī: for nineteen miles; literally, for nineteen thousands of pāxes (see § 114, 4). A thousand paces was a Roman mile, about five thousand feet.
LESSON XXXVIII.

DEPONENT VERBS.

238. Deponent Verbs have, in the main, Passive *forms* with Active *meaning*. But —

a) They have the following Active forms: Future Infinitive, Present and Future Participles, Gerund, and Supine.

b) They have the following Passive meanings: *always* in the Gerundive, and *sometimes* in the Perfect Passive Participle; as, —

sequendus, *to be followed*; adeptus, *having been attained*.

239. Paradigms of Deponent Verbs are —

I. Conjugation.

miror, mīrārī, mīrātus sum, *admire*.

II. Conjugation.

vereor, verērī, veritus sum, *fear*.

III. Conjugation.

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow*.

IV. Conjugation.

largior, largīrī, largītus sum, *give*.

III. Conjugation (in -ior).

patior, patī, passus sum, *suffer*.
### Indicative Mood.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I.</th>
<th>II.</th>
<th>III.</th>
<th>IV.</th>
<th>III. (in -ior)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. miror</td>
<td>vereor</td>
<td>sequor</td>
<td>largior</td>
<td>patior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miraris</td>
<td>vereis</td>
<td>sequeris</td>
<td>largiris</td>
<td>pateris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miratur</td>
<td>veretur</td>
<td>sequitur</td>
<td>largitur</td>
<td>patiturn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miramur</td>
<td>veremur</td>
<td>sequimur</td>
<td>largimur</td>
<td>patimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miraminii</td>
<td>veremini</td>
<td>sequimini</td>
<td>largiminii</td>
<td>patiminii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mirantur</td>
<td>verentur</td>
<td>sequuntur</td>
<td>largientur</td>
<td>patiuntur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp. mirabar</td>
<td>verabar</td>
<td>sequabar</td>
<td>largiabar</td>
<td>patiebar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. mirabor</td>
<td>verabor</td>
<td>sequebar</td>
<td>largiabor</td>
<td>patiar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf. miratus sum</td>
<td>veritus sum</td>
<td>secutus sum</td>
<td>largitus sum</td>
<td>passus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup. miratus eram</td>
<td>veritus eram</td>
<td>secutus eram</td>
<td>largitus eram</td>
<td>passus eram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F.P. miratus erō</td>
<td>veritus erō</td>
<td>secutus erō</td>
<td>largitus erō</td>
<td>passus erō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Subjunctive.

| Pres. mirer | verear | sequar | largiar | patiar |
| Imp. mirārer | verērer | seque rer | largirer | paterer |
| Perf. miratus sim | veritus sim | secū tus sim | largitus sim | passus sim |
| Plup. miratus | veritus | secū tus | largitus | passus |

### Imperative.

| Pres. mirāre | verēre | sequere | largire | patere |
| Fut. mirātor | verētor | sequitor | largitor | patitor |

### Infinitive.

| Pres. mirāri | verēri | sequi | largīri | patī |
| Perf. miratus esse | veritus esse | secū tus esse | largitus esse | passus esse |
| Fut. mirātūrus | veritūrus | secū turus | largitūrus | passīrus |

### Participles.

| Pres. mirāns | verēns | sequēns | largiēns | patiēns |
| Fut. mirātūrus | veritūrus | secū turus | largitūrus | passūrus |
| Perf. mirātus | veritus | secū tus | largitus | passus |
| Ger. mirandum | verendus | sequendus | largiendus | patiendus |

### Gerund.

mirandī, verendī, sequendī, largiendi, patiendi
mirandō, etc., verendō, etc., sequendō, etc., largiendō, etc., patiendō, etc.

### Supine.

mirātum, -tū veritum, -tū secūtum, -tū largītum, -tū passum, -sū
240. **VOCABULARY.**

adorior, oriri, ortus sum, I attack.
audeo, ere, ausus sum, semi-dep., I dare.
colloquor, i, locutus sum, I converse, confer.
cōnror, āri, ātus sum, I endeavor, attempt.
ēgreōtor, ī, gressus sum, I march out.
insulae, ārum, f. pl., ambush, plot.
Jūra, ae, m., the Jura, chain of mountains on the west of Switzerland.
moror, āri, ātus sum, I tarry, delay.
nēmō, m., no one, dat., nēminī, acc. nēminem; gen. and abl. not used.
paulum, adv., a little.
Pompejus, ei, m., Pompey.
proficiscor, i, fectus sum, I set out.
prōgreōtor, ī, gressus sum, I advance, go forward.
propter, on account of, prep. with acc.
resistō, ere, restitī, I resist.
revertor, ī, I return.
Rhodanus, ī, m., the Rhone.

**EXERCISES.**


1 A few verbs have active forms in the Present System, but passive forms elsewhere. These are called semi-deponent.
243. 1. He was marching forth; they marched forth; let us march forth. 2. We ought to return. 3. We have tarried; you were tarrying; they had tarried. 4. I set out; he will set out; they would have set out. 5. No one dared to march forth. 6. We have not yet endeavored to send this letter. 7. Who will dare to resist? 8. The troops advanced a little. 9. We shall return.

 STANDARD BEARERS (signiferi) and TRUMPETERS (tubicines, cornicines).
LESSON XXXIX.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

244. There are two Periphrastic Conjugations,—the Active and the Passive. The Active is formed by combining the Future Active Participle with the auxiliary sum, the Passive by combining the Gerundive with the same auxiliary.

The Active Periphrastic Conjugation expresses an intended or future act; the Passive expresses necessity or duty.

**Active Periphrastic Conjugation. — Indicative Mood.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>amātūrus (-a, -um) sum</td>
<td>I am about to love.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp.</td>
<td>amātūrus eram</td>
<td>I was about to love.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>amātūrus erō</td>
<td>I shall be about to love.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>amātūrus fūi</td>
<td>I have been (was) about to love.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>amātūrus fueram</td>
<td>I had been about to love.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. P.</td>
<td>amātūrus fuerō</td>
<td>I shall have been about to love.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subjunctive.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>amātūrus sim</td>
<td>may I be about to love.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp.</td>
<td>amātūrus essem</td>
<td>I should be about to love.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>amātūrus fuerim</td>
<td>I should have been about to love.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>amātūrus fuissem</td>
<td>I should have been about to love.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Infinitive.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amātūrus esse</td>
<td>to be about to love.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātūrus fuisse</td>
<td>to have been about to love.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Passive Periphrastic Conjugation. — Indicative Mood.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>amandus (-a, -um) sum</td>
<td>I am to be loved, must be loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp.</td>
<td>amandus eram</td>
<td>I was to be loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>amandus erō</td>
<td>I shall deserve to be loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>amandus fūi</td>
<td>I was to be loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>amandus fueram</td>
<td>I had deserved to be loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. P.</td>
<td>amandus fuerō</td>
<td>I shall have deserved to be loved.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

Subjunctive.

Pres. amandus sim, may I deserve to be loved.
Imp. amandus essem, I should deserve to be loved.
Perf. amandus fuerim
Plup. amandus fuisse, I should have deserved to be loved.

Infinitive.

Pres. amandus esse, to deserve to be loved.
Perf. amandus fuisse, to have deserved to be loved.

245.

VOCABULARY.

caedés, is, f., slaughter.
cōnservō, 1, I preserve.
dēdō, ere, dēdī, itus, I give up.
surrender.
dēditō, ere, dēdîtum, I give up.
surrender.
fortūna, ae, f., fortune.
incommodum, i, n., disaster.
liberō, 1, I set free.
loquor, ī, locūtus sum, I speak.
surrender.
recūsō, 1, I refuse.
surrender.
viar, ae, f., life.

EXERCISES.


1 est recūsandum = recūsandum est; such inversions are common.
248. 1. We had been about to speak. 2. The soldiers were on the point of attacking (= were about to attack) this town. 3. She was about to set out. 4. That camp must be defended. 5. Peace must be established with other states. 6. Our liberty must be defended. 7. He was about to wage war. 8. We were on the point of surrendering ourselves.¹

REVIEW.


REVIEW.

250. The Helvetii Attempt to Pass through the Territory of the Sequani.

Helvētii quod ² hāc ³ trānsīre ⁴ nōn poterant, alterum iter temptāvērunt. Jam per angustiās ⁵ et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant et in Haeduōrum finēs pervēnerant eōrum-que agrōs populābantur. Haeduī lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt et auxiliōm rogant. Item Allobrogēs quī trāns Rhodanum vicōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt,⁶ atque opem ab eō petunt.

¹ See § 123. ² quod: because. ³ hāc: by this way; adv. ⁴ trānsīre: to pass; inf. ⁵ angustiās: the pass referred to is that on the iter angustum et difficile mentioned in § 210. ⁶ fugā se recipiunt: betook themselves in flight.
LESSON XL.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

251. A number of Verbs are called Irregular. The most important are sum, dō, ferō, volō, nōlō, mālō, eō, ēō.

252. The Inflection of sum has already been given. Its various compounds are inflected in the same way. Examples are—

absum abesse āfuī āfutūrus am absent
Pres. Partic. absēns (absentis), absent.
adsum adesse adfuī adfutūrus am present
praesum praessēse praefuī praefutūrus am in charge of
Pres. Partic. praesēns (praesentis), present.

253. Possum. In its Present System possum is a compound of pot- (for pote, able) and sum; potuī is from an obsolete potēre.

Principal Parts.

possum, posse, potuī, to be able.

Indicative Mood.

SINGULAR. PLURAL.
Pres. possum, potes, potest; possumus, potestis, possunt.
Imp. poteram; poterāmus.
Fut. poterō; poterimus.
Perf. potuī; potuimus.
Plup. potueram; potuerimus.
F. P. potuerō;

Subjunctive.

SINGULAR. PLURAL.
Pres. possim, possis, possit; possīmus, possītis, possint.
Imp. possem; possēmus.
Perf. potuerim; potuerimus.
Plup. potuissem; potuissemus.

Infinitive.

Pres. posse. Perf. potuisse.

Participle.

Pres. potēns (as an adjective), powerful.
IRREGULAR VERBS.

254. VOCABULARY.

dēsum, dēesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrūs, I am wanting, fail.
excēdē, ere, cessi, cessūrūs, I depart from.
longē, adv.; far.
potestās, tātis, f., power, opportunity.
sententia, ae, f., sentiment, opinion.
tālis, e, such.
vulnus, eris, n., wound.

EXERCISES.

255. 1. Potuerant, potuisse, potuissem. 2. Adfuērunt, adfuisset, adsit. 3. Åfuisset, åfuissent, aberunt. 4. Åfuī, åfutūrūs, absēns. 5. Aderant, aderō, adfuistī. 6. Potuī, posse, poterat. 7. Poterō, potuerō, poterunt, potuerint.


257. 1. He could; they could; you can. 2. He will be able; they had been able; may he be able. 3. We should have been able; to have been able. 4. He was in charge; I had been in charge; they will be in charge. 5. We were absent; they would have been absent; to have been present. 6. We shall be present; we had been present; let him be present.

1I.e. he was able.
LESSON XLI.

IRREGULAR VERBS (Continued).

258. **Dō, I give.**

**Principal Parts.** — dō, dare, dedī, dātus.

**Active Voice.** — **Indicative.**

- **Pres.** dō, dās, dat;
- **Imp.** dābam, etc.;
- **Fut.** dābō, etc.;
- **Perf.** dēdi;
- **Plup.** dederam;
- **F. P.** dederō;
- **Pres.** dem;
- **Imp.** dārem;
- **Perf.** dederim;
- **Plup.** dedissem;

**Subjunctive.**

- **Pres.** dā;
- **Fut.** dātō;
- **Imp.** dārēm;
- **Perf.** dārerēmus;
- **Plup.** dārerēmus;

**Imperative.**

- **Pres.** dāte.
- **Fut.** dātōte;
- **Imp.** dātō.

**Infinitive.**

- **Pres.** dāre.
- **Perf.** dēdisse.
- **Fut.** dātūrus esse.

**Participle.**

- **Gerund.**
- **Supine.**

1. The Passive is inflected regularly with the short vowel. Thus: dārī, dātur, dābātur, dārētur, etc.
259.

**VOCABULARY.**

jūs jūrandum; gen. jūris jūrandī, n., oath (jūs and jūrandum are declined separately).

negōtium, i (ī), n., business.

omnīnō, adv., altogether, at all.

pecūnia, ae, f., money.

publicus, a, um, public.

resposīnsum, i, n., answer.

260.

1. Dabat, damus, dedistis, dederitis. 2. Dedisse, de-derant, dent. 3. Dabās, datis, datūrī estis. 4. Dandī, data erat, datūrī esse. 5. Dabātur, dārī, datī erant.

261.


262.

1. I had given; to have given; having been given.
2. You will give; he would give; I should have given.
3. To be given; it had been given; it would have been given.
4. We gave; he will have given; let him give. 5. Much money had already been given. 6. We shall give much money to you. 7. He would have given much money to us.

263. Caesar Cuts to Pieces One Division of the Helvetii.

Flūmen est Arar, for much money the Latin says, great money. Quod per finēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodonānum infīlut. Id Helvētti ratibus ac lintribus trānsibant. Trēs partēs cōpiārum jam trāductae erant; quārta pars citrā flūmen reliqua erat. Caesar dē tertīa vigilīā cum tribus legiōnibus ē castrīs profectus, ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum trānsierat, et magnum numerum concidit.

1 For much money the Latin says, great money. 2 Flūmen est Arar: there is a river, the Arar (by name). 3 transibant: were crossing. 4 de tertīa vigilīa: in the third watch. 5 profectus: having set out; from proficiscor. It limits Caesar.
LESSON XLII.

IRREGULAR VERBS (Continued).

Ferō, I bear.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Principal Parts.—ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus

Indicative Mood.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. fero, fers, fert;</td>
<td>ferimus, fertis, ferunt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp. ferēbam;</td>
<td>ferēbāmus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. feram;</td>
<td>ferēmus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf. tuli;</td>
<td>tulimus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup. tuleram;</td>
<td>tulerāmus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. P. tulerō;</td>
<td>tulerimus.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subjunctive.

| Pres. feram; | ferāmus. |
| Imp. ferrem; | ferēmus. |
| Perf. tulerim; | tulerimus. |
| Plup. tulissem; | tulissemus. |

Imperative.

| Pres. fer; | ferte. |
| Fut. fertō; | fertōte. |

Infinitive.

| Pres. ferre. | Participle. |
| Perf. tulisse. | Pres. ferēns. |
| Fut. lätūrus esse. | Fut. lätūrus. |

Gerund.

Gen. ferendī. | Supine. |
Dat. ferendō. | Acc. lätum. |
Acc. ferendum. | Abl. lätū. |
Abl. ferendō. | 117 |
### Irregular Verbs

**Passive Voice.**

**Principal Parts.** — feror, fērī, lātus sum, *to be borne*

#### Indicative Mood.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong></td>
<td>feror, fērīs, fērtur;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imp.</strong></td>
<td>fērēbar;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fut.</strong></td>
<td>fērar;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perf.</strong></td>
<td>lātus sum;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plup.</strong></td>
<td>lātus eram;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>F. P.</strong></td>
<td>lātus erō;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Subjunctive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>Imp.</th>
<th><strong>Perf.</strong></th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fērar;</td>
<td>fērer;</td>
<td>lātus sum;</td>
<td>lātīsumus;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>lātus esse;</td>
<td>lātī essemus.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperative.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>Fut.</th>
<th><strong>Plur.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ferre;</td>
<td>fērēr;</td>
<td>ferimini.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fērēr;</td>
<td>feruntor.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Infinitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fērī;</td>
<td>lātus esse.</td>
<td>lātum esse.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Participle.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Pres.</strong></th>
<th><strong>Ger.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lātus;</td>
<td>ferendus.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

So also the Compounds—

- afferō
- auferō
- cōnferō
- inferō
- referō
- afferre
- auferre
- cōnferre
- inferre
- referre
- attuli
- abstuli
- contuli
- intuli
- rettuli
- allātus
- ablātus
- collātus
- illātus
- relātus
- bring
- take away
- collect
- bring against
- bring back
IRREGULAR VERBS.

265.

VOCABULARY.

afferō, ferre, attuli, allātus, I
bring.

calamitās, tātis, f., calamity.

condiciō, onis, f., condition, terms.

confērō, ferre, tuli, collātus, I
bring together; sē confērre, betake one's self.

ignōminia, ae, f., ignominy, disgrace.

impedimentum, i, n., hindrance; in pl., baggage.

nē . . . quidem, not even; emphatic negative, emphasizing the expression placed between nē and quidem.

perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, I carry through, convey; endure.

prōtīnus, forthwith, straightway.

referō, ferre, rettulī, relātus, I bring back.

subsidiēm, i (ii), n., assistance.

tumultus, i, m., uprising.

EXERCISES.

266. 1. Afferēt, attulimus, attulisse. 2. Lātus esse, lātī essent, ferendus. 3. Perfertur, perferēbantur, perlātī sunt.


267. 1. Hostēs nē prīmum quidem impetum tulērunt.


268. 1. We bore; we have borne; he had borne. 2. He would have borne; by bearing; to have borne. 3. Let us bear; we were bearing; they will bear. 4. Let us endure;
to have endured; enduring.  5. The standards were brought back.  6. The Helvetii betook themselves to the mountain.  7. We shall bear assistance to you.¹  8. Who will be able to endure these tortures?

¹ Use the Dative.

**HELMETS (galeae), SHIELDS (scuta), and STANDARDS (signa).**
LESSON XLIII.

IRREGULAR VERBS (Continued).

269. Volō, nōlō, mālō.

Principal Parts.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>volō,</td>
<td>velle,</td>
<td>volui,</td>
<td>to wish, be willing.</td>
<td>to be unwilling.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōlō,</td>
<td>nōlle,</td>
<td>nōluī,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mālō,</td>
<td>mālle,</td>
<td>māluī,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Indicative Mood.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>volō,</td>
<td>volēbam.</td>
<td>volam.</td>
<td>volueram.</td>
<td>voluerō.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vis,</td>
<td>nolēbam.</td>
<td>nolam.</td>
<td>nolueram.</td>
<td>noluerō.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vult;</td>
<td>nollem.</td>
<td>noluerim.</td>
<td>noluissem.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volumus,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vultis,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volunt.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subjunctive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>velim, -īs, -īt, etc.</td>
<td>vellem, -ēs, -ēt, etc.</td>
<td>voluerim.</td>
<td>voluissem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nolim.</td>
<td>nollem.</td>
<td>noluerim.</td>
<td>noluissem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mālim.</td>
<td>mālem.</td>
<td>māluerim.</td>
<td>māluissem.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Imperative.

Pres. nōli, nōlite.

Fut. nōlitō, nōlitō; nōlitōte, nōluntō.

Infinitive.

Pres. velle.

Perf. voluisse.

Participle.

Pres. volēns.
IRREGULAR VERBS.

VOCABULARY.

desero, ere, serui, sertus, I aban-
don, desert, neglect.
discēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, I depart.
hūc, adv., hither.
marimus, a, um, of the sea, maritime.
ōra, ae, f., coast.
quārē, adv., wherefore, why?
semper, always.
socius, i (II), m., ally, comrade.

EXERCISES.


272. 1. Ab ōrā maritimā discēdere nōluēbat. 2. Quārē sociōs nostrōs semper vexāre vultis? 3. Hūc venīre nō-
   luimus. 4. Officium suum dēserere nōluerat. 5. Mālu-
   issēmus in hīs locīs manēre. 6. Ab hōc oppidō discēdere
   nōluissem. 7. Hās victūrīās laudāre volēbamūs. 8. In
   hāc urbe manēre mālumus.

273. 1. We wished; we should have wished; to have wished. 2. I had been unwilling; you were unwilling; you are unwilling. 3. To have preferred; he would have pre-
    ferred; he had preferred. 4. He had been unwilling to withdraw. 5. No one preferred to remain here. 6. We do not wish to abandon our country. 7. He will prefer to depart from this town.

274. The Helvetii Send Envoys to Caesar.

Post hōc proelium Caesar reliquās cōpiās Helvētiorum secūtus est. Pontem in Ararī1 fēcit atque ita exercitum trā-

1 in Arar: over the Arar. The Latin speaks of making a bridge in a river.
duxit. Helvētī repente ejus adventū commotī, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cūjus lēgātiōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, qui in bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit:

"Si pācem nōbīscum faciēs, in eam partem Ibimus atque ibi manēbimus, ubi volēs; sin bellō nōs persequī volēs, reminiscere prīstinam virtūtem Helvētiōrum."

1 commotī: alarmed; agreeing with Helvetii. 2 bello Cassiano: the Cassian War is so called from Lucius Cassius, a Roman general, defeated by the Helvetii some fifty years before the events here narrated. 3 ēgit: parleyed; from ago. 4 nōbīscum: cum is regularly appended to the personal pronoun. 5 in eam partem: to that quarter, to that place. 6 bello: by war, or, in war. 7 reminiscere: remember/ imperative.
LESSON XLIV.

IRREGULAR VERBS (Continued).

275. Fiō (Passive of faciō).

PRINCIPAL Parts.—fiō, fierī, factus sum, to become, be made, occur.

Indicative Mood.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. fiō, fis, fit</td>
<td>Plur. fimus, fitis, fiunt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp. fiēbam;</td>
<td>fiēbāmus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. fiam;</td>
<td>fiēmus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf. factus sum;</td>
<td>factī sumus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup. factus eram;</td>
<td>factī erāmus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. P. factus erō</td>
<td>factī erimus.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subjunctive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. fiām;</td>
<td>Plur. fiāmus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp. fierem;</td>
<td>fierēmus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf. factus sim;</td>
<td>factī simus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup. factus essem;</td>
<td>factī esseius.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Imperative.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. fi;</td>
<td>Plur. fite.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Infinitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. fierī.</td>
<td>Plur. factus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf. factus esse.</td>
<td>Ger. faciendus.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

276. VOCABULARY.

causa, ae, f., cause, reason.
certus, a, um, sure ; compar. certior ; in phrase certior fierī, be informed (made more certain).
concursus, ās, m., a running together.
crēber, bra, brum, frequent.
ob, on account of, prep. with acc.
per, through, by means of, prep. with acc.
perfuga, ae, m., deserter.
prō, in front of, prep. with abl.
repentinus, a, um, sudden.

1 The i is regularly short before er in this verb.
IRREGULAR VERBS.

277. 1. Fiebat, factum est, fiat. 2. Fit, factum erat, factus. 3. Fieri, factus esse, fiunt. 4. Fieret, fiâmus, facta est.

278. 1. Ob eam causam crêbra proelia fièbant. 2. Ex castris Gallorum fit fuga repentina. 3. De hís rebus per perfugás certior factus est. 4. Prò castrís magnus concur-sus fièbat. 5. Nós dè hoc Gallorum tumultû certiorès facti sumus. 6. Ob hás causās illud factum est.

279. 1. We had become; may he become; they would have become. 2. Caesar had been informed concerning this thing. 3. You and Pompey had been made consuls. 4. By this dis-aster you and your brother became captives (nominative). 5. The Gauls will not become free. 6. Many battles took place in Italy.
LESSON XLV.

IRREGULAR VERBS (Continued).

280.

Eō.

Principal Parts.—eō, īre, īvī (īī), ītum (ēst), to go.

Indicative Mood.

SINGULAR.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>eō, īs, īt;</td>
<td>īmus, ītis, īunt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp.</td>
<td>ībām;</td>
<td>ībāmus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>ībō;</td>
<td>ībimus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>īvī (īī);</td>
<td>īvimus (īimus).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>īveram (īeram);</td>
<td>īverāmus (īerāmus).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. P.</td>
<td>īverō (īerō);</td>
<td>īverimus (īerimus).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subjunctive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>ēam;</td>
<td>ēāmus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp.</td>
<td>īrem;</td>
<td>īrēmus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>īverim (īerim);</td>
<td>īverimus (īerimus).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>īvissem (īissem, īsse);</td>
<td>īvissēmus (īissēmus, īssēmus).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Imperative.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>ā;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>ītō, ītō;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Infinitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>īre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>īvisse (ēisse, ēsse).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>ītūrus esse.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Gerund.

eundi, etc.

Participle.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>īēns.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Gen. euntis.)</td>
<td>ītūrus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>ītūris.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Supine.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ītum, ītū.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Transitive compounds of eō admit the full Passive inflection; as, adeor, adīris, adĭtur, etc.
DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Defective Verbs lack certain forms. The following are the most important:

281 Used mainly in the Perfect System.

**


**

Indicative Mood.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>coepī.</td>
<td>memini.</td>
<td>ōdī.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>coeperam.</td>
<td>memineram.</td>
<td>ōderam.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. P.</td>
<td>coeperō.</td>
<td>meminerō.</td>
<td>ōderō.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subjunctive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>coeperim.</td>
<td>meminerim.</td>
<td>ōderim.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>coepissem.</td>
<td>meminissem.</td>
<td>ōdissem.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Imperative.

*Sing.* mementō; *Plur.* mementōte.

Infinitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>coepisse.</td>
<td>meminisse.</td>
<td>ōdisse.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>coeptūrus esse.</td>
<td>meminisse.</td>
<td>ōdisse.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Participle.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>coeptus, begun.</td>
<td>osus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>coeptūrus.</td>
<td>osūrus.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Note that memini and ōdī, though Perfect in form, are Present in sense. Similarly the Pluperfect and Future Perfect have the force respectively of the Imperfect and Future; as, memineram, *I remembered; ōderō, I shall hate.*
282. **VOCABULARY.**

**adeo, ire, il, itus, I go to, visit.**

**circiter, adv., about.**

**circumeò, ire, il, itus, I go around, surround.**

**clam, secretly.**

**duodecim, indecl., twelve.**

**eo, adv., thither, to that place.**

**Incipto, ere, cepi, ceptus, I begin.**

**Ineo, ire, il, itus, I etuer upon; consilium inire, form a plan.**

**initium, i (il), n., beginning.**

**injuria, ae, f., wrong, injustice.**

**intereò, ire, il, iturus, I perish.**

**Mosa, ae, f., the river Meuse.**

**redeò, ire, il, iturus, I return.**

**sinister, tra, trum, left.**

**trans, across, prep. with acc.**

**tränseò, ire, il, itus, I cross.**

**unde, whence.**

**turpis, e, base.**

**EXERCISES.**


285. 1. We were returning; we should have returned; to have returned; they will cross. 2. They had crossed; they crossed; he will cross. 3. You will remember; they were remembering; we hate; let us hate; he hated. 4. I had
begun to cross the river. 5. Two thousand cavalry\(^1\) perished. 6. The cavalry of the enemy went around the camp of the Romans. 7. This river is crossed\(^2\) by a ford. 8. The soldiers will return.

286. Continuation of the Negotiations.

His legatīs Caesar ita respondit: "Si obsidēs mihi a vōbīs dabuntur, et si Haeduī\(^3\) de injūriīs\(^4\) satisfaciētis quās eīs sociisque\(^5\) eōrum intulistis, vōbiscum\(^6\) pacem faciam." Dīvicō respondit: "Helvētiī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare," cônsuēvērunt."\(^8\)

Post hoc respōnsum discēssit.

Posterō die\(^9\) Helvētiī castra ex hoc locō moverunt. Caesar idem fēcit et cum equitātū hostēs sequēbātur.

Ita diēs circiter quīndecim\(^10\) nōn longō intervāllo\(^11\) iter fēcērunt.\(^12\)

---

1 See § 114, 4. 2 See § 280, 1. 3 si Haeduīs satisfaciētis: if you make amends to the Haedui. 4 de injūriīs: for the damages. 5 eīs sociisque eōrum: upon them and their allies (dative). 6 vōbiscum: for cum appended to personal pronouns, compare § 274, nobiscum. 7 obsides accipere, nōn dare: to receive hostages, not to give (them); dependent on consuerunt. 8 consuerunt: are accustomed; the perf. of consuesco has the force of the pres. 9 posterō die: on the following day. 10 dies circiter quīndecim: for about fifteen days. 11 non longō intervāllo: at no long distance (ablative). 12 iter fēcērunt: they marched; literally, made their way.
LESSON XLVI.

IMPERSONAL VERBS. — QUESTIONS.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

287. Impersonal Verbs correspond to the English *it snows, it seems, etc.* They have no personal subject, but may take an Infinitive, a Clause, or a Neuter Pronoun; as, *mē pudet hōc fēcisse,* lit. *it shames me to have done this; hoc decet, this is fitting.* Examples are: —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Impersonal Verb</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>paenitet</td>
<td>it repents, it causes regret</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paenitère</td>
<td>it is permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paenituit</td>
<td>it is fitting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>licet</td>
<td>it happens.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>licère</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oportet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oportère</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oportuit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accidit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accidere</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accidit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Specially to be noted is the impersonal use of such Passive forms as,—

curritur | lit. *it is run* |
---|---|
pugnâtum est | lit. *it was fought* |
ventum est | lit. *it has been come* |
veniendum est | lit. *it must be come* |

QUESTIONS.

288. Questions may be either Word-Questions or Sentence-Questions.

1. Word-Questions. These are introduced by the various interrogative pronouns and adverbs; such as—*quis, qui, quō, quā,* etc. Thus:—

*quis venit,* *who comes?*
*quām diū manēbit,* *how long will he stay?*
2. **Sentence-Questions.** These are introduced—

a) By *nōnne* implying the answer ‘yes’; as,—

*nōnne vidēs,* do you not see?

b) By *num* implying the answer ‘no’; as,—

*num exspectās,* do you expect? (i.e. you don’t expect, do you?).

c) By the enclitic *-ne,* appended to the emphatic word (which usually stands first), and simply asking for information; as,—

*vidēsne,* do you see?

### Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>concurrō,</em></td>
<td>ere, currī, concurr-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>cum,</em></td>
<td>run together.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>dicō,</em></td>
<td>ere, dīxī, dictus, <em>I say.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>liberī,</em></td>
<td>ōrum, m., children (free-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>mellor,</em></td>
<td>ius, better, comp. of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>neglegō,</em></td>
<td>ere, ēxī, ēctus, *I neg-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>nōnne,</em></td>
<td>interrog. particle, expecting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>num,</em></td>
<td>answer ‘yes.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>profugō,</em></td>
<td>ere, fūgī, fugīturus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>profugō,</em></td>
<td><em>I flee, escape.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>quando,</em></td>
<td>when</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>quo,</em></td>
<td>whither, interrog. and rel. adv.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>scribō,</em></td>
<td>ere, scripsi, scriptus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>scribō,</em></td>
<td><em>I write.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>vir,</em></td>
<td>virī, m., man.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Exercises


---

1 Lit. *it is run together, i.e. the men rush.*
2 Lit. *it was assembled thither, i.e. men assembled there.*
QUESTIONS.


REVIEW.


¹ See § 125, footnote 1.
² mēnis, is, m., month.
PART III.

SYNTAX.

LESSON XLVII.

THE ACCUSATIVE.

293. The Accusative is the case of the Direct Object. It may express: —

a. The person or thing affected by the action; as, —
   consulem interfécit, he slew the consul.

b. The result produced by the action; as, —
   librum scripsī, I wrote a book.

TWO ACCUSATIVES—DIRECT OBJECT AND PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE.

294. 1. Many Verbs of Making, Choosing, Calling, Showing, and the like, take two Accusatives, one the Direct Object, the other a Predicate Accusative; as, —
   urbem Rōmam vocant, they call the city Rome.

Here urbem is Direct Object, Rōmam Predicate Accusative.

2. The Predicate Accusative may be an Adjective as well as a Noun; as, —
   hostēs hōc iter periculōsum reddiderant, the enemy had rendered this route dangerous.

3. In the Passive the Direct Object becomes the Subject, and the Predicate Accusative becomes Predicate Nominative; as, —
   urbs Rōma vocāta est, the city was called Rome.
VOCABULARY.

aedificium, i (ii), n., building.
alacer, cris, cre, eager.
appellō, 1, I name, call.
Bacēnis, is, f., Bacenis, a forest in Germany.
dēligō, ere, lēgi, lectus, I choose.
dolor, ōris, m., grief.
efficiō, ere, fēci, fectus, I make, render.
frater, tris, m., brother.
hiemō, 1, I pass the winter.
incendō, ere, cendī, cēnus, I set on fire.
inimicus, i, m., a (personal) enemy.
Lentulus, i, m., Lentulus, a man's name.
Octodūrus, i, m., Octodurus, a city of the Veragri.
opportūnus, a, um, fit, opportune.
praetor, ōris, m., praetor.
privātus, a, um, private.
pugna, ae, f., fight, battle.
-que, and, enclitic conj.
sentiō, ire, sēnsī, sēnus, I feel.

EXERCISES.

296. 1. Haec rēs hostēs ad pugnam alacriōrēs effecerat.

297. 1. We have made Galba leader. 2. Galba had been made leader. 3. The Helvetii called this town Geneva. 4. The valor of the commander made1 the soldiers braver. 5. The Belgians were adjudged the bravest of the Gauls. 6. Caesar adjudged the Belgians the bravest of the Gauls. 7. Whom, O soldiers,2 will you choose (as) commander?

---

1 Use efficiō.
2 The Vocative regularly stands in the second place in the sentence.
298. Caesar Prepares for Battle.

Paulō post¹ ab² explōrātōribus certior factus est, hostēs sub monte cōnsēdīsse³ octō mīlia passuum⁴ ab ipsius⁵ castrīs. Dé tertīā vigiliā⁶ T. Labiēnum cum duābus legiōnibus summum jugum montis ascendere jussit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō⁷ hostēs ierant,⁸ ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mīsit. Labiēnus, postquam montem occupāvit, nostrōs exspectābat. Caesar autem per falsum nūntium deceptus,⁹ proelium hōc diē nōn commīsit.

¹ paulō post: a little afterwards; lit. afterwards by a little; post is the adverb. ² ab: by. ³ hostes sub monte consedisse: that the enemy had encamped at the foot of a mountain; dependent on certior factus est; lit. was informed the enemy to have encamped, etc. ⁴ octo mīlia passuum: eight miles away; Accusative of Extent of Space, § 301. ⁵ ipsius: referring to Caesar. ⁶ de tertīa vigiliā: as in § 263. ⁷ eodem itinere quo: by the same route as; lit. by the same route by which. ⁸ ierant: from eo. ⁹ per falsum nūntium deceptus: one of Caesar's aides falsely reported to him that the hill was occupied, not by Labienus, but by the Helvetii.
LES SSON XLVIII.

THE ACCUSATIVE (Continued).

TWO ACCUSATIVES.—PERSON AND THING.

299. 1. Some Verbs of Asking, Demanding, Teaching, etc., take two Accusatives, one of the Person, the other of the Thing; as,—

*tē haec rogō, I ask you this;
*tē litterās doceō, I teach you (your) letters.

2. In the Passive construction the Accusative of the Person becomes the Subject, and the Accusative of the Thing is retained; as,—

*is omnēs artēs ēdoctus est, he was taught all accomplishments.

TWO ACCUSATIVES WITH COMPOUNDS.

300. 1. Transitive compounds of trāns may take two Accusatives, one dependent upon the Verb, the other upon the Preposition; as,—

*mīlitēs flūmen trādūcit, he leads his soldiers across the river.

ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE.

301. Duration of Time and Extent of Space are denoted by the Accusative; as,—

*quadrāgintā annōs vīxit, he lived forty years;
arborēs quīnquāgintā pedēs altae, trees fifty feet high.
ACCUSATIVE OF LIMIT OF MOTION.

302. 1. The Accusative of Limit of Motion is used, —

a. With names of Towns; as, —

Römam vēni, I came to Rome;

b. With domum, home; domōs, to their (your, our) homes; rūs, to the country; as, —

domum revertitur, he returns home.

2. Other designations of place than those above mentioned require a Preposition (in or ad) to denote Limit of Motion; as, —

ad Italianum vēnit, he came to Italy.

303. VOCABULARY.

ā, ab, from, prep. with abl.; before a vowel or h, the form ab must be used.

ac (atque), and, and also; ac is not used before vowels.

annus, ī, m., year.

Athēnae, ārum, f., Athens.
bīdatum, ī, n., two days.
cōtīdīē, adv., every day, daily.
domus, īs, ī, house, home.
flāgitō, 1, I demand.
Hibērus, ī, m., Hiberus, a river in Spain.
interīm, in the meanwhile.
moneō, ēre, ī, itus, I advise, warn.

obtineō, ēre, ī, tentus, I occupy, hold.
opās, opīs, f. (nom. sing. is not used), power, help; in pl., resources.
passus, īs, m., pace (five feet).
petō, ere, īvī (īfī), ītus, I seek, request.
pollicēor, ērī, ītus sum, I promise.
rēgnum, ī, n., kingdom.
rogō, 1, I ask.
sescentī, ae, a, six hundred.
trāducō, ere, dūxī, ductus, I lead across.

EXERCISES.


305. 1. I shall teach you all these things. 2. We had been taught these things. 3. I have demanded the money of you. 4. These envoys requested help from Caesar. 5. Have you been asked your opinion? 6. Caesar will lead his troops across the Rhine. 7. We remained here ten years. 8. The camp of the enemy is a thousand paces distant. 9. We shall come to Rome. 10. Return home.
LESSON XLIX.

THE DATIVE.

DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT.

306. The Dative is the case of the Indirect Object. The Dative of Indirect Object is used,—

1. With transitive verbs in connection with the Accusative; as,—
   
   hanc pecūniām mihi dat, he gives me this money.

2. With many intransitive verbs; especially with verbs signifying favor, help, injure, please, displease, trust, distrust, command, obey, serve, resist, indulge, spare, pardon, envy, threaten, believe, persuade, and the like, as,—

   Caesar populāribus favet, Caesar favors (i.e. is favorable to) the popular party.
   amīcīs confidō, I trust (to) my friends.

3. With many verbs compounded with the prepositions: ad, ante, com- (con-), in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super, and sometimes circum; as,—

   afflictīs succurrīt, he helps the afflicted;
   exercitūs praeīt, he was in command of the army;
   eum exercitūs praefēcī, I put him in charge of the army.

307. VOCABULARY.

confidō, ere, fīsus sum, semi-
   dep., I trust.

īnferō, ferre, tulī, iūlātus, I bring
   upon. [present at.

intersum, esse, fuī, futūrōs, I am
Labīēnus, i, m., Labienus, a lieu-
tenant of Caesar.

mulier, eris, f., woman.

noceō, ēre, uī, itūrūs, I injure,
harm.

parcō, ere, pepereī, parsūrūs,
I spare.

persuādeo, ēre, suāsī, suāsum,
I persuade.

placēō, ēre, uī, placītūrūs,
I please.
praeficīō, ere, fēcī, fectus, I put in charge.
praemium, i (ii), n., reward.
praesum, esse, fuī, I am in charge of.
recēns, gen., recentis, recent.

rēs pública, gen., rei públicae, f., state, republic.
Sabinus, i, m., Sabinus, a lieutenant of Caesar.
sermo, ōnis, m., conversation.
terror, ōris, m., terror, fear.

EXERCISES.


309. 1. We shall present rewards to our soldiers. 2. I had already given you the letter. 3. Let us spare these children! 4. We have not injured you. 5. Trust these soldiers! 6. I had persuaded all these envoys. 7. I should easily have persuaded your brother. 8. We shall put you in charge of the smaller camp. 9. Caesar was in charge of many legions. 10. Who will bring war upon us?

310. Arrangement of the Roman Troops for Battle.

Postero dīē Helvētiī nostrōs ā novissimō agmine īnsequī ac laccessere coepērunt. Postquam Caesār id animadvertit, cópiās suās in proximum collem subdūcit equitātumque, quī sustinēret

---

1 Observe that the special sign of the indirect object (to, for) is often lacking in English. The pupil must have regard to the meaning.
2 a novissimo agmine: on the rear; lit. from the rear.
hostium impetum,\textsuperscript{1} mísit. Ipse interim in colle medio\textsuperscript{2} tripli- cem aciem instruxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; sed in summō jugō duās legiōnēs,\textsuperscript{3} quās in Galliā Citeriōre proximē conscripserat et omnia auxilia collocāvit ac tōtum montem hominibus complēvit.

\textsuperscript{1} qui sustineret impetum: to withstand the attack; lit. who should withstand the attack. \textsuperscript{2} in colle medio: i.e. half-way up the hill. \textsuperscript{3} legiones, auxilia: objects of collocavit.
LESSON L.

THE DATIVE (Continued).

DATIVE OF AGENCY.

311. The Dative of Agency is used with the Gerundive; as, —

*haec nōbīs agenda sunt*, these things must be done by us;

*mihi eundum est*, I must go (lit. it must be gone by me).

DATIVE OF POSSESSION.

312. The Dative of Possession is used with the verb *sum*; as, —

*mihi est liber*, I have a book (lit. a book is to me).

DATIVE OF PURPOSE OR TENDENCY.

313. The Dative of Purpose or Tendency denotes the end toward which an action is directed or for which something exists; as, —

*castrīs locum dēligere*, to choose a place for a camp.

1. The Dative of Purpose or Tendency is often used in connection with another Dative of the object to which; as, —

*nōbīs sunt odiō*, they are an object of hatred to us (lit. are to us for hatred).

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

314. The Dative is used with adjectives signifying: friendly, unfriendly, similar, dissimilar, equal, near, related to, suitable, etc.; as, —

*mihi inimīcus*, hostile to me;

*proximus ripae*, next to the bank;

*castrīs idōneus locus*, a place suitable for a camp.
315. VOCABULARY.

adversus, a, um, adverse.
colloquium, I (iī), n., conference.
cōnspectus, īs, m., view, sight.
dicō, ere, dixi, dictus, I appoint.
facinus, facinoris, n., crime.
pēs, pedis, m., foot.
proiciō, ere, jēci, jectus, I throw,
cast.

proximus, a, um, nearest, next; see § 102. 1.
scūtum, ī, n., shield.
tēlum, ī, n., javelin.
Trēverī, ōrum, m. pl., Treveri, a tribe of Belgians.
ūsus, ūs, m., use, service.
ventus, ī, m., wind.

EXERCISES.


317. 1. This camp must be bravely defended by us. 2. We must make resistance (= it must be resisted by us; § 287). 3. The Helvetii had many villages. 4. The Romans had large fleets. 5. Let us appoint a day for a conference. 6. Caesar chose a place for a camp. 7. This place was suitable for a cavalry battle. 8. These villages are next the sea. 9. This thing was of great assistance to us.

1 See § 311, 2d example.
2 Compare the fifth sentence in the Latin Exercise.
LESSON LI.

THE GENITIVE.

GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

318. A noun used to complete the meaning of another noun is put in the Genitive.

319. The Genitive of Possession denotes ownership; as, —

   domus Ciceronis, Cicero's house.

   1. The Possessive Genitive is often used predicatively, especially with esse and fieri; as, —

   domus est Ciceronis, the house is Cicero's.

320. The Subjective Genitive denotes the person who makes or produces something or who has a feeling; as, —

   dicta Ciceronis, the utterances of Cicero;
   timores liberorum, the fears of the children.

321. The Objective Genitive denotes the object of an action or feeling; as, —

   metus deorum, fear of the gods.

322. The Genitive of the Whole (Partitive Genitive) denotes the whole of which a part is taken; as, —

   magna pars hominum, a great part of mankind.

   1. The Genitive of the Whole occurs especially with the Neuter of Pronouns, or of Adjectives used substantively; as, —

   quid consilii, what purpose? (lit. what of purpose?);
   plus auctoritatis, more authority (lit. more of authority).

323. Genitive of Quality. The Genitive modified by an Adjective is used to denote quality; as, —

   vir magnae virtutis, a man of great valor;
   fossa quindecim pedum, a trench fifteen feet wide
   (or deep).

144
1. The Genitive of Quality is often used predicatively; as,—

hic vir est magnae virtūtis, *this man is of great valor.*

### VOCABULARY.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>English Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>āmittō, ere, mīśī, missus,</td>
<td>I lose.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ancora, ae, f.,</td>
<td>anchor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arcessō, ere, ĕvī, ĕtus,</td>
<td>I summon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>armātūra, ae, f.,</td>
<td>equipment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēterī, ae, a,</td>
<td>the rest, the other.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>custōdia, ae, f.,</td>
<td>custody.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dicō, ere, dīxī, dictus,</td>
<td>I utter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperium, ī (īī), n.,</td>
<td>rule, command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jūstus, a, um,</td>
<td>just.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>levis, e,</td>
<td>light.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modus, ī, m.,</td>
<td>manner, kind.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōnnullus, a, um,</td>
<td>some (§ 83).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pābulum, ī, n.,</td>
<td>forage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quantus, a, um,</td>
<td>how much, how great?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>satis, enough, indecl.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supersum, esse, fuī,</td>
<td>I remain, am left.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>via, ae, f.,</td>
<td>road, way.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### EXERCISES.


326. 1. Caesar’s legions were brave. 2. The onset of the Gauls was withstood. 3. This victory of our troops was most welcome to the Romans. 4. Your recollection of my favors is most welcome to me. 5. How much forage was in the camp? 6. There was not enough money. 7. These soldiers were of the greatest valor. 8. Our soldiers filled up a trench ten feet in depth.

1. Translate: ‘Not enough of money was.’
2. Use in with the acc.
327. The Battle Begins.

Helvētī cum omnibus suis carrīs secūtī\(^1\) impedimenta in unum locum contulērunt;\(^2\) ipsī, cōnfertissimā\(^3\) acīē, sub prīmam nostram aciēm successērunt. Caesar equōs omnium ex cōnspectū remōvit atque cohortātus\(^4\) suōs proelium commīsit. Mīlitēs, quiē locō superiore pīla mīsērunt, facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt.

\(^1\)secūtī: following. \(^2\)contulerunt: from confero. \(^3\)confertissima acie: in a very dense line of battle. \(^4\)cohortatus suos: having encouraged his men.
LESSON LII.

THE GENITIVE (Continued).

GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

328. The Genitive is used with Adjectives signifying desire, knowledge, memory, participation, power, fullness, and their opposites; as,—

studiosus discendi, desirous of learning;
peritus belli, skilled in war;
cupidus belli, desirous of war.

GENITIVE WITH VERBS.

329. The Genitive is used with memini, reminiscor (remember), obliteror (forget);¹ as,—

animus praeteritorum meminit, the mind remembers the past.

Genitive with Impersonal Verbs.

330. The Impersonals pudet, it shames; paenitet, it causes regret, take the Accusative of the person affected, together with the Genitive of the object toward which the feeling is directed; as,—

pudet me tui, I am ashamed of you (lit. it shames me of you).

Interest.

331. With interest, the person or thing concerned is denoted by the Genitive; as,—

patris interest, it concerns the father. (of the father)

¹ These also often govern the Accusative, especially of a neut. pron. or adj. 147
THE GENITIVE.

VOCABULARY.

beneficium, i (ii), n., kindness.
defectio, ônis, f., revolt.
etiam, also.
genus, eris, n.; kind.

imperitus, a, um, inexperienced.
oblíviscor, i, oblitus sum, forget.
paenitet, it causes regret.
pléinus, a, um, full.
pristinus, a, um, pristine.

EXERCISES.

333. 1. Pléna est vita periculorum. 2. Hujus generis pugnae imperitii sumus. 3. Harum contuméliárum memini-


334. 1. The Helvetii were fond of war. 2. They remembered the valor of their ancestors. 3. We shall not forget your favors. 4. Do you remember this revolt? 5. We regret this war. 6. We were inexperienced in dangers.

REVIEW.

LESSON LIIII.

THE ABLATIVE.

336. The Ablative unites in itself three cases which were originally distinct both in form and in meaning; viz. —

The Genuine Ablative, or from-case.
The Instrumental, or with-case. (by, with)
The Locative, or where-case.

GENUINE ABLATIVE USES.

Ablative of Separation.

337. The Ablative of Separation is construed sometimes with, sometimes without, a preposition. The preposition is omitted especially with verbs of freeing, depriving, lacking, and with adjectives of similar meaning; as, —

periculīs liberātus, freed from dangers.

Ablative of Agent.

338. The Ablative accompanied by à (ab) is used with passive verbs to denote the personal agent; as, —

à Caesare accusātus est, he was accused by Caesar.

Ablative of Comparison.

339. The Ablative is used with Comparatives in the sense of than; as, —

patria mihi vītā cāriōr est, my country is dearer to me than life.

1. But plūs, amplius (more), minus (less), and longius (further) are often used as the equivalents of plūs quam, minus quam, etc.; as, —

plūs decem homīnēs aderant, more than ten men were present.
VOCABULARY.

ä, ab, by, prep. with abl.
amplius, more.
amplus, a, um, great, glorious.
commeatus, ãs, m., supplies.
dissensus, õnis, f., disagreement.
expellō, ere, pulī, pulsus, I drive out.
genus, eris, n., stock, family.
locus, ì, m., place; family.
nāscor, i, natus sum, I am born.
obsidio, onis, f., siege.
occidō, ere, cīdī, cīsus, I kill.
possessio, õnis, f., possession.
repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsus, I drive back, repel.
septingenti, ae, a, seven hundred.
Usii, õrum, m., Usii, a German tribe.
Usipetēs, um, m., Usipetes, a German tribe.
vīgintī, twenty, indecl.

EXERCISES.

341. 1. Caesar Ubiōs obsidione liberavit. 2. Helvētīf
finibus suīs excesserunt. 3. Usipetēs propter dissensusiones
possessionibus suīs expulsi sunt. 4. Hostēs Caesarem com-
meatū prohibuerunt. 5. Hostēs a militibus nostrīs repulsi
sunt. 6. Nihil est hominibus cārius libertāte. 7. Amplius
vīgintī vici incenduntur. 8. In eō proelio minus septingenti
militēs occisi sunt. 9. Plūs quinque milia captivorum ā
Caesare occisi sunt. 10. Nōs māgnō tinnōre liberāvistī.
11. Hostēs ā finibus nostrīs reppulimus. 12. Quis est
melior fratre tuō? 13. Nēmō illōs militēs ab īs mūnī-
tiōnibus prohibēbit.

342. 1. The Germans were driven out of their villages.
2. We shall free our fellow-citizens from fear. 3. The
Romans drove back the Gauls from the rampart of the camp.
4. We kept the cavalry away from the ford of the river.
5. More than a hundred towns were captured by Caesar.
6. What is nobler than friendship? 7. Is not virtue better
than friendship? 8. More than two hundred German
horsemen were driven back by us.
343. **Defeat of the Helvetii.**

Diū atque acriter pugnātum est. 1 Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent,2 aliī sē in montem recēpērunt, aliī3 ad impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Ad multam noctem4 ad5 impedīmenta pugnātum est, propterēa quod prō vāllō6 carrōs objecerant7 et e locō superiōre tēla coniciēbant et nostrōs vulnerābant. Diū cum pugnātum esset,8 impedīmentīs castrīsque nostrī potītī sunt.9

1 pugnātum est: the battle raged; lit. it was fought; § 287. 2 cum non possent: when they could not; § 413. 3 aliī . . . aliī: some . . . others. 4 ad multam noctem: till far into the night. 5 ad: at; near. 6 pro vāllō: as a rampart. 7 objecerant: from obicio. 8 cum pugnātum esset: for the cum clause, see above on cum possent. 9 impedīmentīs potītī sunt: got possession of the baggage; for the abl. see § 344, 1.

*Bridge built by Caesar across the Rhine.*
LESSON LIV.

THE ABLATIVE (Continued).

INSTRUMENTAL USES.

Ablative of Means.

344. The Ablative is used to denote means or instrument; as, —

sagittā vulnerātus est, he was wounded by an arrow.

The Ablative of Means is used with:—

1. ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vescor; as, —

dīvītīs ūtitur, he uses his wealth (lit. he benefits himself by his wealth);

vītā fruitur, he enjoys life (lit. he enjoys himself by life).

2. With opus est, there is need; as, —

duce nōbis opus est, we need a leader (lit. need is to us, etc.).

3. With Verbs of filling and Adjectives of plenty; as,—

fossās lapidibus complēvērunt, they filled the trenches with stones.

Ablative of Cause.

345. The Ablative is used to denote cause; as, —

multa glōriae cupiditāte fēcit, he did many things on account of his love of glory.

Ablative of Manner.

346. The Ablative modified by an adjective is used to denote manner; as, —

magnā gravitāte loquitur, he speaks with great dignity.

a. Where there is no adjective, cum is used; as, —

cum gravitāte loquitur, he speaks with dignity.
THE ABLATIVE.

347. VOCABULARY.

adducō, ere, dúxi, ductus, I lead on, impel.
celeritas, ātis, ā, speed.
conficio, ere, fécī, fectus, I exhaust.
deditio, ādītio, ānis, ā, surrender.
dēstrīmentum, ī, n., loss, damage.
dignitas, ātis, ā, dignity, rank.
eruptio, ānis, ā, sally.
grātia, ae, f., influence.
inopia, ae, ā, lack.
lacessō, ere, lacessāvī, lacessitus, I harass.
nocturnus, a, um, at night.
opus, n., need, indecl.
perveniō, ire, vēnī, ventum, I come, arrive.
ratiō, ānis, ā, reason.
recipiō, ere, cāpī, ceptus, I take back; with reflexive sē, to retreat.
ūtor, ī, āsus sum, I use.

EXERCISES.


349. 1. The soldiers had been exhausted by the long march. 2. We shall use the help of the Gauls. 3. The trenches were filled by the soldiers with large stones. 4. We shall need cavalry and infantry. 5. He spoke with great dignity. 6. From fear of danger the envoys withdrew from the camp. 7. The Helvetii were not contented with their narrow boundaries.

---

1 In Latin the conjunction 'and' is often omitted between the last two members of an enumeration.
LESSON LV.

THE ABLATIVE (Continued).

INSTRUMENTAL USES (Continued).

Ablative of Accompaniment.

350. The Ablative with cum is used to denote *accompaniment*; as,—

*cum comitibus profectus est, he set out with his attendants.*

Ablative of Degree of Difference.

351. The Ablative is used with comparatives and words involving comparison (as *post, afterwards; ante, before; superäre, surpass*) to denote the *degree of difference*; as,—

*tribus pedibus altior, three feet higher (lit. higher by three feet).*

Ablative of Quality.

352. The Ablative, modified by an adjective, is used to denote *quality*; as,—

*vir magnā virtūte, a man of great courage.*

1. The Ablative of Quality may also be used predicatively; as,—

*vir est magnā virtūte, the man is of great courage.*

Ablative of Price.

353. The Ablative of Price is used with verbs of *buying and selling*; as,—

*servum parvō pretiō ēmit, he bought the slave for a small price.*

Ablative of Specification.

354. The Ablative of Specification is used to denote that *in respect to which* something is or is done; as,—

*Helvētī omnibus Gallīs virtūte praestābant, the Helvetians surpassed all the Gauls in valor.*
1. The Ablative of Specification is used also with dignus, worthy, and indignus, unworthy; as,—

honōre dignī, worthy of honor.

355. VOCABULARY.

ante, adv., before.
antecēdō, ere, cessā, cessūrus, I precede.
auctōritās, ātis, f., authority, influence.
dignus, a, um, worthy.
fidēs, eī, f., confidence.
nihilō, abl., by nothing.
paulō, abl., by a little.
post, afterwards.
solvō, ere, solvī, solvūtus, Iloose, of ships, unmoor; nāvēs solvere, set sail.
superō, 1, I surpass.
talentum, ī, n., a talent (about $1200).
vēndō, ere, vēndīdī, vēndītus, I sell.

EXERCISES.


357. 1. Caesar set out with four legions. 2. He returned home with his brother. 3. A few years before, Caesar had first come into Gaul. 4. A few years after, he returned to Rome. 5. This plan is much better. 6. He sold this house for ten talents. 7. Are we not worthy of the highest honor? 8. This man surpassed the rest in virtue. 9. The enemy were superior in number.
358. **Retreat of the Helvetii.**

Ex eō proelīō circiter hominum mīlia¹ CXX superfuērunt² eamque tōtam noctem³ continenter īērunt;⁴ dēnique diē quārtō⁵ in finēs Lingonum pervēnērunt, quoniam et⁶ propter vulnera militum et sepulturam occisorum⁷ nostrī ēōs sequī non potuerant. Caesar Lingones⁸ ēōs frūmentō⁹ aut alīs rēbus juvene vetuit. Ipse post trīduum cūm omnibus cōpiīs ēōs sequī coepit.

---

¹ hominum mīlia: § 114, a; hominum is Genitive of the Whole; § 322.
² superfuerunt: from supersum.
³ eam totam noctem: § 301.
⁴ īērunt: from eo.
⁵ diē quarto: on the fourth day.
⁶ et... et: both... and.
⁷ occisorum: of the slain.
⁸ Lingones ēōs juvare vetuit: forbade the Lingones to help them.
⁹ frumento, rebus: § 344.
LESSON LVI.

ABLATIVE (Continued).

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

359. The Ablative Absolute is grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence. It generally consists of a noun or pronoun limited by a participle; as,—

urbe captā, cīvēs fūgērunt, when the city had been captured, the citizens fled (lit. the city having been captured).

1. Instead of a participle we often find an adjective or a noun; as,—

vīvō Caesare, rēs pūblica salva erat, while Caesar was alive the state was safe (lit. Caesar [being] alive);


2. The Ablative Absolute is generally best translated by a subordinate clause, i.e. by a clause introduced by when, as, since, if, though, etc.; or by a prepositional phrase (in, during, after, by); or by an active participle with its object.

360. VOCABULARY.

cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus, I collect.

cōnjūrātīō, ēnīs, f., conspiracy.

M., abbreviation for Mārcus, I, m., Marcus (a man’s name).

Messalla, ae, m., Messalla (a man’s name).

petītātus, ās, m., infantry.

Pīsō, ēnīs, m., Piso (a man’s name).

EXERCISES.

361. 1. Barbarī, magnā multītūdīne petītātūs coāctā, ad castra vēnērunt. 2. Is, M. Messallā et M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus,

1 Avoid translating the Ablative Absolute by the English Nominative Absolute. Find a natural English equivalent.

362. 1. In the consulship of Pompey and Crassus the Germans crossed the Rhine. 2. When these tribes had been overcome, Caesar returned to winter-quarters. 3. In our consulship the Helvetii were driven back and killed. 4. Having taken many towns by storm, this commander was waiting for his fleet. 5. Having heard of the arrival of Marcellus, we sent envoys to him. 6. When all the arms had been collected from this town, he set out for (in) the territory of the Ubii (Ubii, ārorum).
LESSON LVII.

ABLATIVE (Continued).

ABLATIVE OF PLACE AND TIME.

(Locative Uses.)

Ablative of Place.

A. Place where.

363. The place where is regularly denoted by the Ablative with the preposition in; as, —

in urbe habitat, he dwells in the city.

1. But names of towns—except Singulats of the First and Second Declensions—stand in the Ablative without a preposition; as, —

Carthaginë, at Carthage; Athenës, at Athens.

B. Place from which.¹

364. Place from which is regularly denoted by the Ablative with the preposition ab, dé, or ex; as, —

ab Italië profectus est, he set out from Italy.

1. But names of towns and domō, from home, stand in the Ablative without a preposition; as, —

Rōmē profectus est, he set out from Rome.

Ablative of Time.

365. The Ablative is used to denote the time at which or within which; as, —

¹ Place from which, though strictly a 'Genuine Ablative' use, is treated here for the sake of convenience.
quartā hōrā mortuus est,* he died at the fourth hour;
lūna octō et vigintī dīēbus cursum cōnficit, the moon completes its orbit within twenty-eight days.

THE ABLATIVE.

366. The Locative case occurs:—

1. Regularly in the singular of names of towns and small islands of the first and second declensions, to denote the place in which; as,—

Rōmae, at Rome;  Corinthī, at Corinth (see § 29, 3).

2. In a few special words; as,—

domi, at home;  humī, on the ground.

367. VOCABULARY.

Aprilis, e, adj., of April.
dēspērō, 1, I despair.
Kalendae, ārum, f., Kalends (first of the month).
Rōma, ae, f., Rome.
tempus, oris, n., time.
tertius, a, um, third.
trīdatum, i, n., three days.
vigilia, ae, i., watch (of the night).


369. 1. In these places were large forests. 2. He remained one day at Geneva. 3 On that day I saw you and your friends at Avaricum. 4. From Athens we returned to Rome. 5. From Rome we hurried into Gaul. 6. We set out in the first watch. 7. You were consul in that year. 8. Within six years I shall be consul.
The Helvetii Surrender to Caesar.


¹ adducti: induced, forced, impelled. ² eos exspectare jussit: ordered them to await. ³ quō: in which. ⁴ eo: thither, there; the adverb. ⁵ his traditis: § 359; his refers to arms and hostages. ⁶ oppida, vicīs: objects of restituere.
LESSON LVIII.

SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES.

ADJECTIVES USED SUBSTANTIVELY.

371. Adjectives, including Possessive and Demonstrative Pronouns and Participles, are often used as Substantives in the Plural. The Masculine denotes persons; the Neuter denotes things; as,—

docti, learned men; nostri, our men; parva, small things.

COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES.

372. 1. The Comparative often corresponds to the English Positive with ‘rather,’ ‘somewhat,’ ‘too’; as,—

senectus est loquacior, old age is rather talkative.

2. So the Superlative often corresponds to the Positive with ‘very’; as,—

fortissimus, bravest, or very brave.

OTHER PECULIARITIES.

373. Certain Adjectives may be used to denote a part of an object, chiefly extrimus (end of), summus (top of), medius (middle of), imus (bottom of); 1 as,—

summus mons, the top of the mountain.

374. VOCABULARY.

abeo, ire, ii, iturus, go away. nox, noctis, f., night.
credo, ere, didi, ditum, believe. plerique, aeque, aque, most.
extrimus, a, um, extreme, end of. proccus, ere, cessi, cessurus,
gravis, c, heavy, difficult. I advance.
hiems, is, f., winter. respondeo, ere, spondi, sponsus, I answer, reply.
hortor, arri, atus sum, I exhort.

1 In this use the Adjective precedes the Noun.

162
SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES.

EXERCISES.


376. 1. Our (men)\(^1\) withstood the onset of the barbarians. 2. I said all these (things) in the senate. 3. He remembers many (things).\(^2\) 4. Most (persons) heard this. 5. Our (men) seized the top of the mountain. 6. In the last part of the summer we were informed of these things.\(^3\) 7. The march was somewhat difficult.

---

\(^1\) Words in parenthesis are not to be translated.
\(^2\) See §329, footnote.
\(^3\) The substantive use of neuter pronouns and adjectives is regularly confined to the Nominative and Accusative Cases; \(rēs\) must be used here.
LESSON LIX.

SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

377. 1. The Personal Pronouns as subjects of verbs are generally not expressed except for emphasis, contrast, or clearness. Thus ordinarily:

\[ \text{video, I see;} \quad \text{amat, he loves.} \]

But \[ \text{ego tē video, et tū mē vidēs, I see you, and you see me.} \]

2. The Genitives mei, tui, nostrī, vestrī, are used only as Objective Genitives; nostrum and vestrum as Genitives of the Whole. Thus:

\[ \text{memor tui, mindful of you;} \quad \text{nēmō vestrum, no one of you.} \]

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

378. The Possessive Pronouns are generally not employed except for the purpose of clearness. Thus:

\[ \text{patrem amō, I love my father.} \]

But \[ \text{patrem tuum amō, I love your father.} \]

Ipse.

379. 1. Ipse, literally self, acquires its special force from the context; as, \[ \text{eō ipsō diē, on that very day.} \]

PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

380. Alius, another, is often used correlative; as, \[ \text{aliud loquitur, aliud sentit, he says one thing, he thinks another.} \]

So likewise alter, the other; as, \[ \text{alter exercitum perdidit, alter vēndidit, one ruined the army, the other sold it.} \]
SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS.

381. VOCABULARY.

cede, ere, cessi, cessurus, I yield, withdraw.
conicio, ere, conjecci, conjec-tus, I hurl.
differo, ferre, distuli, dilatus, I differ.
exitus, us, m., exit, passage.
fiducia, ae, f., confidence.

institutum, I, n., institution.
laus, laudis, f., praise.
mercur, eri, meritus sum, I deserve.
misericordia, ae, f., pity.
prenio, ere, pressi, pressus, I press, crowd.
subeo, ire, ii, iturus, I approach.

EXERCISES.


383. 1. I was touched by your recollection of me. 2. Part of us went away. 3. Your pity of us touched my father.
4. He was driven out by his own fellow-citizens. 5. They had long contended with each other. 6. We have long contended with each other. 7. Some fought with swords, others with javelins. 8. One was killed, another fled. 9. The one fled, the other was captured.

REVIEW.

384. 1. SIEquanos et Helvetios obsides inter se dare jussit. 2. Ea ipsa nocte hic nobilis captivus ad suos fugit. 3. A

1 Supply est from the following capta est.
2 his own: use the proper form of suus.
3 Compare the fifth sentence in the Latin exercise.

385. Original Number of the Helvetii and their Allies. The Survivors.

In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae1 repertae sunt, litterās Graecīs confectae,2 in quibus nōminātim ratiō3 confecta erat eōrum qui arma ferre poterant; et sēparātim puerōrum,4 senum, mulierumque. Summa5 erat: Helvētiōrum milia CCLXII; Tulingōrum, milia XXXVI; Latobrigōrum XIII; Rauracōrum XXIII. Eōrum,6 qui domum7 rediērunt, censū habītō, ut Caesar imperāverat, milia CCLVIII abesse reperta sunt.8

---

1 tabulae, lists. 2 confectae, made out, written; participle agreeing with tabulae. 3 ratio: an account. 4 puerorum, senum, mulierum: depending on ratio, understood. 5 summa: the sum total. 6 eorum censu habito: when a census had been taken of those; § 359. 7 domum: Accusative of Limit of Motion; § 302, b. 8 abesse reperta sunt: were found to be missing. The greater part of this vast number of missing people had probably perished.
386. The Subjunctive is used in Independent Sentences to express something—

1. As willed — Volitive Subjunctive;
2. As desired — Optative Subjunctive;
3. Conceived of as possible — Potential Subjunctive.

387. The Volitive Subjunctive has the following varieties: —

A. Hortatory Subjunctive.

388. The Hortatory Subjunctive expresses an exhortation. This use is confined to the first person plural of the Present. The negative is nē. Thus:

eāmus, let us go;
nē dēspērēmus, let us not despair.

B. Jussive Subjunctive.

389. The Jussive Subjunctive expresses a command; as, —
dīcat, let him tell.

1. Negative commands, i.e. prohibitions, are usually expressed by means of nōlit (nōlīte), with a following infinitive; as, —
nōlī hoc facere, don't do this (lit. be unwilling to do)!

390. Vocabulary.

accēdō, ere, cessī, cessārūs, I draw near.
cōnsidō, ere, sēdī, I settle.
cūrō, 1, I care for, take care of.
dēsistō, ere, dēstitī, I cease.
dĭmīttō, ere, mīsī, mīssus, I let go.
disciplīna, ae, f., discipline.
mōs, mōris, m., custom.
nē, not.
rețineō, ēre, ūi, tentus, I retain.
sūmō, ere, sūmptā, sūmptus, I take.
sūmptus, I take.
SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES.

EXERCISES.

391. 1. Mōrēs atque disciplīnam majōrum retineāmus!
2. Hanc occasiōnem nē dīmittāmus!
3. Omnēs proelīō dēsistant!
4. Haec cūrentur!
5. Ille accēdat!
6. Nōli discēdere!
7. Nōlīte, militēs, officia vestra dēserere!
8. Nēmō incolās hūjus īnsulae laccēsat!
9. Nōlī tālia verba probāre!
10. Amīcōrum meminerīmus!
11. Omnēs amīcī meī nē dēfendant!
12. Helvētiī in Galliā nē cōnsīdant!
13. Arma sūmāmus!

392. 1. Let us withstand the onset of the enemy!
2. Let us not abandon our duty!
3. Let Ariovistus return home!
4. Let the Germans not ravage the fields of the Gauls!
5. Let him keep the Germans away from the Rhine!
6. Do not go away!
7. Do not join battle!

Testudo.
LESSON LXI.

OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE. — POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE. — THE IMPERATIVE.

OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

393. The Optative Subjunctive expresses a wish. The negative is nē.

1. The Present Tense, often with utinam, is used where the wish is conceived of as possible; as,—

utinam veniat, may he come!
dī istae prohíbent, may the gods prevent that!
nē veniant, may they not come!

2. The Imperfect expresses a regret that something is not so now; the Pluperfect, that something was not so in the past. The Imperfect and Pluperfect are regularly accompanied by utinam; as,—

utinam istud ex animō dīcerēs, would that you were saying that in earnest! (i.e. I regret that you are not saying it in earnest);

utinam nē vēnisset, would that he had not come.

POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE.

394. The Potential Subjunctive expresses the ideas conveyed by the English auxiliaries should, would; as,—

fortūnam facilius reperiās quam retineās, you would find Fortune more easily than you would hold her.

THE IMPERATIVE.

395. The Imperative is used in commands, admonitions, entreaties, laws, etc.; as,—

ĕgredere ex urbe, depart from the city;
mihi ignōsce, pardon me.
THE IMPERATIVE.

396.

VOCABULARY.

aestas, ātis, f., summer.
āvertō, ere, verti, versus, I avert.
cōnsumō, ere, sūmpsi, sūmpstus, I use up.
dō, dāre, dedi, datus, I give, render.
facilis, e, easy.
intelligō, ere, lēxi, lēctus, I know, understand.
jūs, jūris, n., right, power.
opera, ae, f., assistance.
pator, I, passus sum, I suffer.
uitam, affirmative particle.
vincō, ere, vici, victus, I conquer.

EXERCISES.


398. 1. Would that we had better defended the lives and fortunes of our fellow-citizens! 2. May our country not suffer any harm! 3. Would that these soldiers were braver! 4. Would we had not abandoned our duty! 5. What would seem better? 6. I should scarcely believe you. 7. Defend, fellow-citizens, the common safety.

399. The Gauls Complain of Ariovistus’s Tyranny and Beg for Caesar’s Help.¹

Bellō² Helvētīorum cōnfectō, lēgātī tōtīus fērē³ Galliae, principēs civitātum, ad Caesarem convēnērunt. Locūtus est

¹ This and the five following passages of connected discourse deal with Caesar’s campaign against Ariovistus, which is given in the second half of Book I of Caesar’s Commentaries. ² § 359. ³ fērē: with tōtīus.
pró hís Dívitiácus Hæduus atque dé injúriís Ariovísti, régis Germánórum, questus est. Ille\(^1\) centum et viginti milia Germánórum\(^2\) tráns Rhénum trádúxerat, quí multós Gallós é sédibus\(^3\) expulerant optimamque partem Galliae occupábant.\(^4\)

\(^1\) ille: referring to Ariovistus.  
\(^2\) § 322.  
\(^3\) § 337.  
\(^4\) occupábant: were taking possession of.
LESSON LXII.

MOODS IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

CLAUSES OF PURPOSE.

400. The Subjunctive with ut, nē, and quō is used to express Purpose; as,—

edimus, ut vivámus, we eat that we may live.
adjútā mē quō hóc fiat facilius, help me, in order that this may be done more easily.
portās clausit, nē quam oppidānī injūriām acciperent, he closed the gates, lest the townspeople should receive any injury.

a. A Relative Pronoun (quī) or Relative Adverb (ubi, unde, quō) is frequently used to introduce a Purpose Clause; as,—

Helvētlē lēgātōs mīsērunt quī dīcerent, the Helvetii sent envoys to say (lit. who should say).

SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

401. 1. In all dependent clauses, the tenses of the Subjunctive usually conform to the so-called ‘Sequence of Tenses.’ By the Sequence of Tenses, Principal Tenses of the Indicative are followed by Principal Tenses of the Subjunctive, Historical by Historical.

2. The Principal Tenses of the Indicative are: Present, Future, Present Perfect (p. 60, footnote), Future Perfect.

The Historical Tenses are: Imperfect, Historical Perfect (p. 60, footnote), Pluperfect.

3. In the Subjunctive the Present and Perfect are Principal tenses, the Imperfect and Pluperfect, Historical.
SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

Examples of Sequence.

PRINCIPAL SEQUENCE,—

\[\text{videō quid faciās}, \text{I see what you are doing.}\]
\[\text{vidēbō quid faciās}, \text{I shall see what you are doing.}\]
\[\text{vidērō quid faciās}, \text{I shall have seen what you are doing.}\]
\[\text{videō quid fēcerīs}, \text{I see what you have done.}\]
\[\text{vidēbō quid fēcerīs}, \text{I shall see what you have done.}\]
\[\text{vidērō quid fēcerīs}, \text{I shall have seen what you have done.}\]

HISTORICAL SEQUENCE,—

\[\text{vidēbam quid fæcerēs}, \text{I saw what you were doing.}\]
\[\text{vidī quid fæcerēs}, \text{I saw what you were doing.}\]
\[\text{vidērēm quid fæcerēs}, \text{I had seen what you were doing.}\]
\[\text{vidēbam quid fēcissēs}, \text{I saw what you had done.}\]
\[\text{vidī quid fēcissēs}, \text{I saw what you had done.}\]
\[\text{vidērēm quid fēcissēs}, \text{I had seen what you had done.}\]

4. The Present and Imperfect Subjunctive denote incomplete action, the Perfect and Pluperfect completed action.

402. VOCABULARY.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \text{Aquitānia, ae, f., Aquitania, a district of Gaul.}\n  \item \text{conjungō, ere, jūnxi, jūctus, I unite.}\n  \item \text{Crassus, ī, m., Crassus (a man's name).}\n  \item \text{exsistō, ere, exstitī, I arise.}\n  \item \text{mōtus, ās, m., revolt.}\n  \item \text{nē, lest, that ... not.}\n  \item \text{quō, in order that; regularly used with Comparatives.}\n  \item \text{remaněō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, I remain.}\n  \item \text{ut, that, in order that.}\n\end{itemize}

EXERCISES.

403. 1. Crassus in Aquitāniām proficīscitur, nē tantae nātiōnēs conjungantur. 2. Locum castrīs idōneum délēgit nē commēātū prohibērētur. 3. Caesar cum equitātū proficīscitur nē ullus\(^1\) mōtus exsistat. 4. Nōnnūllī remanēbant ut suspicīōnem timōris vītārent. 5. Quō iter expeditius faceret,

\(^1\) In Latin we regularly find \text{nē quis} = \text{in order that no (one)}; \text{nē ullus} = \text{in order that no, etc.}
impedimenta reliquit. 6. Lēgātōs mīsit quī haec nūntiārent
7. Castra in locīs superiōribus posuit nē quīs1 ea oppugnāret.
8. Ūnam legiōnem reliquit, quae castra défenderet. 9. Bar-
brōs expulimus ut vōs timōre et periculis liberāremus.
10. Oppidum mūnīmus quō cīvēs hostibus facilius resistant.

404. 1. We did these (things) that we might be free.
2. We do these (things) that we may be free. 3. Caesar
chose men to fortify the camp. 4. We put Galba in charge
of the captives in order that none2 should flee. 5. We for-
tified the camp with a trench in order that we might defend it.
6. Caesar joined battle, in order that greater armies might not
assemble.

1 In Latin we regularly find nē quīs = in order that no (one); nē ullus =
in order that no, etc.
2 Translate, lest any.

Bow, Arrow, and Javelin (arcus, sagitta, pilum).
LESSON LXIII.

CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC. — RESULT CLAUSES. — CAUSAL CLAUSES.

CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC.

405. 1. A relative clause used to express some quality or characteristic of an indefinite or general antecedent is called a Clause of Characteristic, and stands in the Subjunctive; as,—

multa sunt, quae mentem acuant, there are many things which sharpen the wits.

2. Clauses of Characteristic are used especially after such expressions as sunt qui, there are (some) who; nemo est qui, there is no one who; unum est qui, there is only one who; etc. Thus:—

sunt qui dican, there are (some) who say;
nemo est qui putet, there is nobody who thinks.

RESULT CLAUSES.

406. The Subjunctive with ut, ut non, is used to denote Result; as,—

mons altissimus impendebat, ut perpauci prohibere possent, a very high mountain overhung, so that a very few could stop them.

CAUSAL CLAUSES.

407. 1. Causal Clauses introduced by quod, quia, quoniam, take the Indicative when the reason is that of the writer or speaker; the Subjunctive when the reason is viewed as that of another. Thus:—
eōs timeō quod diffidō cōpiīs nostrīs, *I fear them, because I distrust our troops.*

accūsātus est quod corrumperet juventūtem, *he was arraigned on the ground that he was corrupting the young.* (Here the reason is not that of the writer but of the accuser. Hence the Subjunctive.)

2: *Cum* causal takes the Subjunctive; as,—

`cum ita sint, since this is so.`

**408. VOCABULARY.**

accidit, ere, accidit, *it happens.*
approinquō, 1, *I approach.*
barbarus, a, um, *barbarous.*
commūtātiō, ōnis, f., *change.*
cōnsistō, ere, cōnsitī, *I consist.*
cum, because, since.
dēspiciō, ere, exī, ẹctus, *I despise.*
jūro, 1, *I swear, take oath.*
obsideō, ēre, sēdī, sessus, *I blockade.*

paucitās, ātis, f., *fewness, small number.*
quoā, because.
quoniam, inasmuch as, conj.
renovō, 1, *I renew.*
scio, scire, sciī, sciū, scītus, *I know.*
sublevō, 1, *I relieve.*
tam, so (of degree).
ūnus, a, um, *alone.*

**EXERCISES.**

410. 1. Who is there that says these (things)? 2. These soldiers were so brave that they feared no one. 3. The enemy were so terrified that they fled into the forests. 4. This place was such that our (men) could easily defend it. 5. Inasmuch as these (things) are so, we shall remain in this place. 6. Because no one else was present, he accused us. 7. He accused you because (on the ground that) you did not resist the enemy.

411. Caesar Decides that Ariovistus and the Germans are a Menace to Roman Interests in Gaul.

LESSON LXIV.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY postquam, ut, ubi, simul ac, etc.

412. 1. Postquam, after; ut, ubi, when; simul ac (simul atque), as soon as, referring to a single past occurrence, take the Perfect Indicative; as,—

postquam audīvit vīcissee suōs, ‘satis’ inquit ‘vīxi,’
after he heard that his troops had conquered, he said, ‘I have lived enough.’

TEMPORAL CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY cum.

413. Cum temporal (‘when’), referring to the past, takes the Indicative (Imperfect, Historical Perfect, or Pluperfect) to denote the point of time at which something occurs; the Subjunctive (Imperfect or Pluperfect) to denote the situation or circumstances under which something occurs; as,—

eras cōnsul, cum mea domus ārdēbat, you were consul at the time when my house burned up; cum hōc dīxisset, omnēs abiērunt, when he had said this, all went away.

414. Cum temporal, referring to the Present or Future, takes the Indicative; as,—

cum tē videō, semper gaudeō, when I see you, I am always glad.
TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

415.

VOCABULARY.

animadvertō, ere, vertī, versus, I notice.
cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus, I learn, become acquainted with.
comperīō, ire, peri, pertus, I find out.
cum, when, conj.
ēiciō, ere, ējēci, ejectus, I thrust out; sē ēicere, rush forth.
exeo, ire, ii, exitūrus, I go out, go forth.
factiō, ōnis, f., faction.
postquam, after, conj.
quaerō, ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, I inquire.
simul ac (atque), as soon as.
subdūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus, I withdraw.
ubi, when.

EXERCISES.


417. 1. After Caesar made the bridge, he marched into Germany. 2. When he heard these (things), he went away. 3. As soon as I saw you, I entreated your help. 4. On that day when you spoke in the senate, very many were present. 5. When the Gauls had seen our (men), they fled into the forests.
LESSON LXV.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES (Continued).

CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY *dum* AND *dōnec*.

418. 1. *Dum*, *while*, takes the Present Indicative with the force of an Imperfect; as,—

*dum* pugnat, *sagittā* ìctus *ēst*, *while he was fighting, he was struck by an arrow.*

2. *Dum* and *dōnec*, *as long as*, take the Indicative; as,—

*dum* anima *ēst*, *spēs* *ēst*, *as long as there is life, there is hope.*

3. *Dum*, *dōnec*, and *quoad*, *until*, take —

a. The Indicative, to denote an actual event; as,—

*dōnec* rediit, *fuit* *silentium*, *there was silence till he came.*

b. The Subjunctive, to denote expectancy; as,—

*expectāvit* Caesar *dum* nāvēs *conveniērent*, *Caesar waited for the ships to assemble.*

419

VOCABULARY.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adversārius, ii, m., adversary.</td>
<td><em>dum</em>, <em>while</em>; <em>as long as</em>; <em>until</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ago, ere, ēgī, āctus, <em>I do.</em></td>
<td><em>magistrātus</em>, ūs, m., <em>magistrate</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domitianus, i (ī), m., Domitian (a man’s name).</td>
<td><em>perficiō</em>, ere, fēcī, fectus, <em>I accomplish</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dōnec, until.</td>
<td><em>silentium</em>, ī (īf), n., <em>silence</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tamen, nevertheless, yet.</td>
<td><em>tamen</em>, nevertheless, yet.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EXERCISES.

Temporal Clauses.

While the troops were assembling, Caesar consulted with the tribunes. 2. As long as Caesar was in Gaul, he was waging war. 3. We waited six days till you should come. 4. While these things were being accomplished, we withdrew. 5. As long as they remain here, they are safe (in columnis, e).

422. Ariovistus Rejects the Proposal for a Conference. — Caesar’s Demands.

Ei legatione Ariovistus respondit: “Quid negotii Caesar aut populo Romano est in mea Gallia, quam bello victi? Si quid Caesar vult, ad me veniat! Ad eum non ibo.” His responsis ad Caesarem relatit, iterum ad eum Caesar legatos cum his mandatis misit: “Noli plurès Germanos trans Rhenum in Galliam traducere! Redde etiam Gallis obsides quos habes! Nisi haec facies, injuriās Gallorum ulciscar.”

3 § 344. 4 quid: anything; the indefinite pronoun. § 389. 6 § 359.
7 noli traducere: do not lead! § 389, 1.
LESSON LXVI.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.

423. A Substantive Clause is one which serves as the Subject or Object of a verb, or denotes some other case relation.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES DEVELOPED FROM THE VOLITIVE.

424. The Subjunctive with ut and nē is used in Substantive Clauses developed from the Volitive after verbs signifying to admonish, request, command, grant, resolve, and the like; as,—

postulō ut fiat, I demand that it be done (dependent form of the Jussive fiat, let it be done!);
ōrat nē abēsēs, he begs that you will not go away;
huic concēdō, ut ea praetererat, I allow him to pass that by;
dēcrēvit senātus ut Opīmius vidēret, the senate decreed that Opinius should see to it.

425. The Subjunctive with nē, quōminus, and quīn is used in Substantive Clauses after verbs of hindering; as,—

nē lūstrum perficeret, morē prohibuit, death prevented him from finishing the lustrum.
prohibuit quōminus in ānum coīrent, he prevented them from coming together.

426. VOCABULARY.

Βōjī, ōrum, m. pl., Boji, an ancient tribe.
concēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, I grant.
dēcrēnō, ere, crēvī, crētus, I decree, decide.
imperō, 1, I command.
itaque, accordingly.
omnīnō, at all (with negatives).
permitto, ere, mīsī, missus, I permit.
praeципō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, I enjoin.
quōminus, from (with verbs of hindering).
reddō, ere, reddidī, redditus, I return, give back.
reiciō, ere, rejēcī, rejectus, I hurl back.
restituō, ere, ūf, ūtus, I restore.
sequor, ū, secūtus sum, I seek.
trānsportō, 1, I transport.
SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.

EXERCISES.


428. 1. I commanded the soldiers\(^1\) to attack this town. 2. Caesar commands the soldiers\(^1\) to attack this town. 3. He commands them\(^1\) not to cross the river. 4. Ariovistus permitted his cavalry\(^1\) to ravage the fields of the Gauls. 5. The senate decreed that the soldiers should march forth. 6. We hindered the enemy from crossing this river.

\(^1\) Use the Dative.
LESSON LXVII.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES (Continued).

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES DEVELOPED FROM THE OPTATIVE.

429. The Subjunctive with *ut* and *né* is used in Substantive Clauses developed from the Optative. Thus:

1. With verbs of *wishing* and *desiring*, especially *optō*, *volō*, *mālō*; as,

   *optō ut in hōc concilio nēmō improbus reperiātur*, *I hope that in this council no bad man may be found* (here *ut reperiātur* represents a simple optative of direct statement, viz. *nēmō improbus reperiātur*, *may no bad man be found!*).

2. With verbs of *fearing* (*timeō*, *metuō*, *vereor*). Here *né* means that, *lest*; and *ut* means that *not*; as,

   *timeō nē veniat*, *I fear that he will come* (originally: *may he not come! I'm afraid [he will]*)

   *timeō ut veniat*, *I fear that he will not come* (originally: *may he come! I'm afraid [he won't]*)

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF RESULT.

430. The Subjunctive with *ut* and *ut nōn* is used in Substantive Clauses of Result. Thus:

1. As object clauses after verbs of *doing, accomplishing*. Thus:

   *gravitās periculī facit ut auxiliō egeāmus*, *the seriousness of the danger makes us need aid* (lit. makes that we need).

2. As the subject of impersonal verbs; as,

   *ex quō efficitur*, *ut voluptās nōn sit summum bonum*, *from which it follows that pleasure is not the greatest good.*
SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.

INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

431. The Subjunctive is used in Indirect Questions after verbs of asking, inquiring, and the like.
Like Direct Questions, Indirect Questions may be introduced—

a. By Interrogative Pronouns (who, what) or Adverbs (where, when, how, etc.); as,—

dico mihi ubi fueris, quid feceris, tell me where you were, what you did.

b. By num or -ne, without distinction of meaning; as,—

quaesivit num salvum esset scutum, or salvumne esset scutum, he asked whether his shield was safe.

432. VOCABULARY.

contröversia, ae, f., controversy.
edücō, ere, dúxi, ductus, I lead forth.
itā, so (of manner).
lēgātiō, ōnis, f., embassy.
lūna, ae, f., moon.
optō, 1, I desire.
öratiō, ōnis, i., speech.
plēbs, is, f., common people.
praetereā, besides.
prīmō, first, firstly.
rescindō, ere, scidī, scissus, I tear down.
sīc, so (of manner).
tergum, ī, n., back.
vertō, ere, vertī, versus, I turn;
terga vertere, flee.

EXERCISES.


434. 1. I fear that our (men) will flee. 2. Caesar feared that his (men) would flee. 3. We fear that the soldiers will not withstand the onset of the barbarians. 4. We desire that you may be free. 5. It happened that ships were lacking. 6. We brought it about that you were informed of these things. 7. I asked the envoys what they wished. 8. I asked them whether the Germans had crossed the Rhine.

REVIEW.


436. Ariovistus's Reply to Caesar.

"Non mea sponte Rhenum transii, neque sine magnis praemiis pollicitationibusque domum reliqui. Sedes, quas in Gallia habemus, nobis a Gallis ipsis concessae sunt. Numquam ante hoc tempus exercitus populi Romani e finibus sua provinciae egressus est. Quid vis aut cur in mea possessione venisti? Nisi decedes atque exercitum ex his regionibus deduces, te non pro amico sed pro hoste habebio."

1 mea sponte: of my own accord. 2 § 338. 3 § 337. 4 suae provinciae: of their province, i.e. the Roman province in southern Gaul. 5 pro amico, pro hoste: as a friend, as an enemy; lit. for a friend, for an enemy.
LESSON LXVIII.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES. — CLAUSES WITH quamquam.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

437. Conditional Sentences are complex sentences consisting of two parts, the Protasis (or condition), usually introduced by si, if, or nisi, unless, and the Apodosis (or conclusion). There are three types of Conditional Sentences:

438. First Type. — Simple Conditions (Nothing implied as to the Reality of the Supposed Case).

In Simple Conditions the Indicative is used in both Protasis and Apodosis; as,

si hoc dicis, erras, if you say this, you are mistaken;
si hoc dixistis, erravistis, if you said this, you were mistaken.

439. Second Type. — 'Should' . . . 'Would' Conditions.

In 'Should' . . . 'Would' Conditions the Subjunctive (Present or Perfect) is used in both Protasis and Apodosis; as,

si hoc dicas, erras, if you should say this, you would be mistaken.

440. Third Type. — Conditions Contrary to Fact.

In Conditions Contrary to Fact, the Subjunctive is used in both Protasis and Apodosis, the Imperfect referring to present time, the Pluperfect to past; as,

si amicus meus adesset, gauderem, if my friend were here, I should rejoice.
si hoc dixisses, erravisses, if you had said this, you would have been mistaken.
CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY quamquam, cum, although.

441. 1. **Quamquam**, although, is followed by the Indicative; as,—

quamquam festinās, nōn est mora longa, although you are in haste, the delay is not long.

2. **Cum**, although, is followed by the Subjunctive; as,—

mē nōn adjūvit, cum possett, he did not help me, though he was able.

VOCABULARY.

animus, i, m., soul, heart.
Atticus, i, m., Atticus, the friend of Cicero.
cum, though.
honor, ōris, m., honor.
immortālis, e, immortal.
incertus, a, um, uncertain.
līber, era, erum, free.
mandō, 1, I assign.
mors, mortis, i., death.
nisi, unless.
opprimō, ere, pressī, pressus, I overwhelm.
pateō, ēre, patuī, lie open.
prōvideō, ēre, vidī, visus, I provide, take care.
quamquam, although.
valeō, ēre, uī, itūrus, avail, prevail.
vis (vis), f., violence; pl., virēs, ium, strength.

EXERCISES.

443. 1. Mors nōn est timenda, si animus immortālis est.

444. 1. If the soldiers are of good heart, there is hope of victory. 2. If you come to Rome, you will see me. 3. If

1 § 352. 2 Observe that come really equals shall come. Hence the future must be used. In conditional sentences the English present often has the force of the future, and must be so rendered in Latin.
you should come to Rome, you would see us. 4. If you had told me this, I should not have set out. 5. If our fleet were at hand, we should wish nothing else. 6. Although boats were lacking, Caesar decided to cross the Rhine. 7. Though no one is here, I shall remain.
LESSON LXIX.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE (Oratio Obliqua).

445. When the language or thought of any person is quoted without change, it is called Direct Discourse; as,—

*Caesar said, 'The die is cast.'*

When, on the other hand, one's language or thought is made to depend upon a verb of *saying, thinking, etc.*, that is called Indirect Discourse; as,—

*Caesar said that the die was cast;*  
*Caesar thought that his troops were victorious.*

MOODS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

446. Declarative Sentences upon becoming Indirect change their main clause to the Infinitive with Subject Accusative, while all subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive; as,—

*dixérunt sé habēre quāsdam rēs, quās petere vellent, they said they had (lit. said themselves to have) certain things which they wished to request.* (Direct: *habēmus quāsdam rēs quās petere volumus.*)

TENSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

A. TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.

447. The tenses of the Infinitive denote time, not absolutely, but *with reference to the verb on which they depend.* Thus:—
a. The Present Infinitive represents an act as occurring at the same time with the time of the verb on which it depends; as,—

dicit sē facere, he says he is doing (lit. says himself to do);
dixit sē facere, he said he was doing (lit. said himself to do).

b. The Perfect Infinitive represents an act as occurring before the time of the verb on which it depends; as,—

dicit sē fēcisse, he says he has done (lit. says himself to have done);
dixit sē fēcisse, he said he had done (lit. said himself to have done).

c. The Future Infinitive represents an act as occurring after that of the verb on which it depends; as,—

dicit sē factūrum esse, he says he will do (lit. says himself to be about to do);
dixit sē factūrum esse, he said he would do (lit. said himself to be about to do).

B. TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

448. These follow the regular principle for the Sequence of Tenses, being Principal, if the verb of saying is Principal; Historical, if it is Historical; as,—

dicit sē lēgātōs vidēre, quī venerint, he says he sees the envoys who have come;
dixit sē lēgātōs vidēre, quī vēnissent, he said he saw the envoys who had come.

449. VOCABULARY.

advenīō, īre, vēnī, ventum, I arrive.
arbitror, ārī, ātus sum, I consider.
incolō, ere, uī, cultus, I inhabit.
inferior, īus, inferior (§ 102, 2).
infirmus, a, um, weak.
modo, just, just now.
neque (nec), nor.
onerārius, a, um, burden-bearing;
nāvēs onerāriae, transports.
pellō, ere, pepuli, pulsus, I rout, defeat.
posterus, a, um, following (§ 102, 2).
putō, 1, I think.
**EXERCISES.**


451. 1. It is reported that the Gauls are fortifying the hill which they have seized. 2. It is reported that the Gauls will fortify the hill which they have seized. 3. It is reported that the Gauls have fortified the hill which they have seized. 4. It was reported that the Gauls were fortifying the hill which they had seized. 5. It was reported that the Gauls would fortify the hill which they had seized. 6. It was reported that the Gauls had fortified the hill which they had seized.

452. **The Germans and Romans Meet in Battle.**

LESSON LXX.

THE INFINITIVE.

INFINITIVE WITHOUT SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE.

453. The Infinitive without Subject Accusative is used as the Subject of *est* and various impersonal verbs; as,—

*dulce et decōrum est prō patriā morī*, *it is sweet and noble to die for one's country*.

454. The Infinitive without Subject Accusative is used as the Object of many verbs, particularly after —

*volō, mālō, nōlō; dēbeō, ought; audeō, dare, statuō, decide, etc.*

INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE.

455. The Infinitive with Subject Accusative is used as the Subject of *est* and various impersonal verbs; as,—

*nihil in bellō oportet contemnī*, *nothing ought to be despised in war* (lit. *nothing to be despised, is fitting*).

456. The Infinitive with Subject Accusative is used as Object after many verbs. Thus: —

*a. With verbs of saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving, and the like. This is the regular construction of Principal Clauses of Indirect Discourse, and has received full illustration in the preceding lesson.*

*b. Also with jubeō, order, and vetō, forbid; as,—*

*Caesar militēs pontem facere jussit*, *Caesar ordered the soldiers to make a bridge*.
457. **VOCABULARY.**

**comparō,** 1, *I get ready.*
**cōnstat,** stāre, stīsit, *it is evident.*
**dispōnō,** ere, posuī, positus, *I distribute.*
**jubeō,** ēre, jussī, jussus, *I order.*
**lapis,** ēdis, m., *stone.*
**licet,** ēre, licuit, *it is permitted.*
**nanciscor,** ē, nactus sum, *I procure.*
**necessē est,** it is necessary.
**opert,** it behooves; it is fitting.
**opus est,** it is necessary.
**ōrdō,** inis, m., *rank.*
**prō,** prep. with abl., *for, in behalf of.*
**servō,** 1, *I preserve.*
**statuō,** ēre, ui, ūtus, *I decide.*

**EXERCISES.**


459. 1. It was necessary to do many (things) at the same time. 2. It is necessary to be brave in battle. 3. We wish to be brave. 4. Endeavor to be good. 5. It behooves us to set out at once. 6. It is necessary (for) us to fortify this camp. 7. It behooves us to be brave. 8. I ordered you to summon the tribunes. 9. We ordered the messengers to be dismissed.
LESSON LXXI.

PARTICIPLES.

460. 1. TENSES OF THE PARTICIPLE. The tenses of the Participle express time, not absolutely, but with reference to the verb upon which the Participle depends.

a. The Present Participle denotes action occurring at the same time with that of the verb. Thus:

 audiō tē loquentem, I hear you speaking (i.e. you are speaking and I hear you);
 audiēbam tē loquentem, I heard you speaking (i.e. you were speaking, and I heard you);
 audiam tē loquentem, I shall hear you speaking (i.e. you will be speaking and I shall hear you).

b. The Perfect Passive Participle denotes action occurring before that of the verb. Thus:

 locūtus taceō, having spoken I am silent (i.e. I have spoken and am silent);
 locūtus tacui, having spoken, I was silent (i.e. I spoke and then became silent);
 locūtus tacēbō, having spoken, I shall become silent (i.e. I shall speak and then become silent).

c. The Future Participle, as a rule, is not used except in the Active Periphrastic Conjugation (p. 110).

d. The actual time of the action of a participle, therefore, is determined entirely by the finite verb with which it is connected.

2. Participles are often equivalent to an English subordinate clause, relative, temporal, causal, conditional, etc.; as,

 omne malum nāscēns facile opprimitur, every evil is easily crushed at birth;
 mente ūtī nōn possumus, cibō et pōtiōne complēti, if gorged with food and drink, we cannot use our intellects.

195
3. Often, too, the participle is equivalent to a coördinate clause; as,—

Ahāla Maelium occupātum interēmit, Ahala surprised and killed Maelius (lit. killed Maelius having been surprised).

4. Participles, being Adjectives, agree with their nouns in Gender, Number, and Case.

**VOCABULARY.**

cāsus, ēs, m., chance, hazard.
cernō, ere, I perceive.
cōnspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus, I see.
experior, ēri, pertus sum, I try, test.
laborō, ī, I toil; in battle, be hard pressed.
mūrus, ī, m., wall.
oculus, ī, m., eye.
persequor, ī, secūtus sum, I follow up.
submittō, ere, mīsi, missus, I send, despatch.
tueor, ēri, I guard, watch.

**EXERCISES.**


463. 1. This soldier was killed (while) fighting in the first line of battle. 2. (Though) exhausted with many wounds, we did not abandon our leader. 3. When he had been summoned, he came at once. 4. We put to flight the cavalry (who had been) driven back. 5. Caesar left these captives to be guarded.

Cum diū pugnātum esset, omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum, quī circiter quinque milia passuum ex eo locō aberat pervēnērunt. Ibi āceī trānāre contendarunt aut, lintribus inventīs, salūtem reperrerunt. In hīs fuit Ariovistus, qui, nāvīculam deligātam ad rīpam nactus, eā profūgit. Equītēs nostrī, reliquōs omnēs cōnsecūtī, interfecerunt. Hōc proelī nūntiātō, multī aliī Germānī, quī ad rīpam convēnerant atque flūmen trānsīre parābant, domōs rediērunt.

1 § 413. terga vertērunt: lit. turned their backs, i.e. fled. neque destīterunt: and did not cease. prius . . . quam: = priusquam. ad flūmen Rhēnum: with pervenerunt. § 301. § 322. § 359. nāvīculam: object of nactus. nactus: from nanciscor. ea: referring to nāvīculam. reliquōs omnēs: object both of consecūtī and of interfecerunt. § 302, b.
LESSON LXXII.

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE. — SUPINE.

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

465. Of the four cases in which the Gerund occurs, only the Genitive, Accusative, and Ablative are in common use; as,

- cupidus audienti, desirous of hearing;
- ad agendum natus, born for action;
- mens descendendo alitur, the mind is fed by learning.

Gerundive Construction instead of the Gerund.

466. 1. Instead of the Gerund with a Direct Object, another construction is commoner. This consists in putting the Direct Object in the case of the Gerund and using the Gerundive in agreement with it. This is called the Gerundive Construction. Thus:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{GERUND CONSTRUCTION.} & & \text{GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION.} \\
\text{cupidus urbem videndi, desirous of seeing the city;} & & \text{cupidus urbis videndae;} \\
\text{dlector oratroris legendo, I am charmed with reading the orators.} & & \text{dlector oratroribus legendis.}
\end{align*}
\]

2. The commonest use of the Gerundive Construction is with ad to denote purpose; as, ad pacem petendam venerunt, they came to seek peace (lit. for peace to be sought).

THE SUPINE.

467. The Supine in -um is used after Verbs of motion to express purpose; as,

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{legati ad Caesarem gratulatum venerunt, envoys came to Caesar to congratulate him.}
\end{align*}
\]
468.

VOCABULARY.

ad, for (denoting purpose), prep. with acc.
administrō, 1, I perform.
aliēnus, a, um, unfavorable.
causā, abl., for the sake of; the dependent genitive precedes.
cōnsector, ārī, ātus sum, I follow up.
effugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, I escape.
explōrō, 1, I examine.

ōrātor, ōris, m., orator, envoy.
praeō, ōnis, m., robber.
reddō, ere, reddidī, redditus, I render.
spatium, ī (ī), n., space, time.
Themistocēs, īs, m., Themistocles, an Athenian statesman.
tūtus, a, um, safe.
versor, ārī, ātus sum, be engaged in.

EXERCISES.


470. 1. (There) was no opportunity of withdrawing. 2. The envoys came for (the purpose of) conferring with Caesar. 3. By saying these (things) he made the soldiers more eager for fighting. 4. For the sake of saving the city, we have given much 1 money. 5. He marches out from camp for (the purpose of) attacking this town. 6. We have come to announce this victory.

1 Use magnus.

1 orō, 1, beg.
RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. The subject of the verb stands in the nominative.
2. The object of the verb stands in the accusative.
3. The verb agrees with its subject in number and person.
4. A predicate noun agrees with its subject in case.
5. An appositive agrees in case with the word which it explains.
6. An adjective agrees with the noun which it limits in gender, number, and case.
7. The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person, but its case is determined by its construction in the clause in which it stands.
8. Many verbs of making, choosing, calling, showing, and the like, take two accusatives, one the direct object, the other a predicate accusative (294).
9. Some verbs of asking, demanding, teaching, etc., take two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing (299).
10. Transitive compounds of trans may take two accusatives, one depending upon the verb, the other upon the preposition (300).
11. Duration of time and extent of space are denoted by the accusative (301).
12. The accusative of limit of motion is used with names of towns, and with domum, domōs, and rūs (302).
13. The accusative and ablative are used with prepositions.
14. The dative is the case of the indirect object (306, 1).
15. The dative is used with many verbs signifying favor, help, injure, please, displease, trust, distrust, command, obey, serve, resist, indulge, spare, pardon, envy, threaten, believe, persuade, and the like (306, 2).
16. The dative is used with many verbs compounded with the prepositions ad, ante, circum, com- (con-), in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super (306, 3).

17. The dative of agency is used with the gerundive (311).

18. The dative of possession is used with the verb sum (312).

19. The dative of purpose or tendency denotes the end toward which an action is directed or for which something exists (313).

20. The dative is used with adjectives signifying friendly, unfriendly, similar, dissimilar, equal, near, related to, suitable, etc. (314).

21. A noun used to complete the meaning of another noun is put in the genitive (318).

22. The genitive of possession denotes ownership (319).

23. The subjective genitive denotes the person who makes or produces something, or who has a feeling (320).

24. The objective genitive denotes the object of an action or feeling (321).

25. The genitive of the whole denotes the whole of which a part is taken (322).

26. The genitive modified by an adjective is used to denote quality (323).

27. The genitive is used with adjectives signifying desire, knowledge, memory, participation, power, fulness, and their opposites (328).

28. The genitive is used with memini, reminiscor ("I remember"), and with obliviscor ("I forget") (329).

29. The impersonals pudet ("it shames") and paenitet ("it causes regret") take the accusative of the person affected, along with the genitive of the object toward which the feeling is directed (330).

30. With interest, the person or thing concerned is denoted by the genitive (331).

31. The ablative of separation is construed sometimes with, sometimes without, a preposition (337).

32. The ablative accompanied by ā (ab) is used with passive verbs to denote the personal agent (338).
33. The ablative is used with comparatives in the sense of 'than' (339).
34. The ablative is used to denote means or instrument (344).
35. The ablative is used to denote cause (345).
36. The ablative modified by an adjective is used to denote manner (346).
37. The ablative with cum is used to denote accompaniment (350).
38. The ablative is used with comparatives and words involving comparison to denote the degree of difference (351).
39. The ablative modified by an adjective is used to denote quality (352).
40. The ablative of price is used with verbs of buying and selling (353).
41. The ablative of specification is used to denote that in respect to which something is, or is done (354).
42. The ablative absolute is grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence. It generally consists of a noun or pronoun limited by a participle (359).
43. Place where is regularly denoted by the ablative with the preposition in (363).
44. Place from which is regularly denoted by the ablative with ã (ab), dé, or ex (364).
45. The ablative is used to denote the time at which or within which (365).
46. The hortatory subjunctive expresses an exhortation (388).
47. The jussive subjunctive expresses a command (389).
48. The optative subjunctive expresses a wish (393).
49. The potential subjunctive expresses the ideas conveyed by the English auxiliaries should, would (394).
50. The imperative is used in commands, admonitions, and entreaties (395).
51. The subjunctive with ut, né, and quó is used to denote purpose (400).
52. By the sequence of tenses principal tenses of the indica-
tive are followed by principal tenses of the subjunctive; historical by historical (401).

53. A relative clause used to express some characteristic of an indefinite or general antecedent is called a clause of characteristic and stands in the subjunctive (405).

54. The subjunctive with ut, ut non, is used to denote result (406).

55. Causal clauses introduced by quod and quia take the indicative when the reason is that of the writer or speaker; the subjunctive, when the reason is viewed as that of another (407).

56. Cum causal takes the subjunctive (407, 2).

57. Postquam, 'after'; ut, ubi, 'when'; simul ac, 'as soon as,' referring to a single past act, take the perfect indicative (412).

58. Cum temporal referring to the past takes the indicative to denote the point of time at which something occurs; the subjunctive to denote the situation or circumstances under which something occurs (413).

59. Cum temporal referring to the present or future takes the indicative (414).

60. Dum, 'while,' takes the present indicative with the force of an imperfect (418, 1).

61. Dum and donec, 'as long as,' take the indicative (418, 2).

62. Dum, 'until,' takes the indicative to denote an actual fact; the subjunctive to denote expectancy (418, 3).

63. The subjunctive with ut and ne is used in substantive clauses developed from the volitive after verbs signifying to admonish, request, command, grant, resolve, and the like (424).

64. The subjunctive with ne, quominus, and quin is used in substantive clauses after verbs of hindering (425).

65. The subjunctive with ut and ne is used in substantive clauses developed from the optative (429).

66. The subjunctive with ut and ut non is used in substantive clauses of result (430).
RULES OF SYNTAX.

67. The subjunctive is used in indirect questions after verbs of asking, inquiring, and the like (431).
68. In simple conditions the indicative is used in both protasis and apodosis (438).
69. In 'should' . . . 'would' conditions the subjunctive, present or perfect, is used in both protasis and apodosis (439).
70. In conditions contrary to fact the subjunctive is used in both protasis and apodosis, the imperfect referring to present time, the pluperfect to past (440).
71. Quamquam, 'although,' is followed by the indicative (441, 1).
72. Cum, 'although,' is followed by the subjunctive (441, 2).
73. Declarative sentences, upon becoming indirect, change their main verb to the infinitive with subject accusative, while all subordinate clauses take the subjunctive (446).
74. The tenses of the infinitive denote time, not absolutely, but with reference to the verb on which they depend (447).
75. The infinitive without subject accusative is used as the subject of est and various impersonal verbs (453).
76. The infinitive without subject accusative is used as the object of many verbs (454).
77. The infinitive with subject accusative is used as the subject of est and various impersonal verbs (455).
78. The infinitive with subject accusative is used as the object of many verbs (456).
79. The tenses of the participle express time, not absolutely, but with reference to the verb on which the participle depends (460).
80. Instead of the gerund with a direct object, another construction is commoner. This consists in putting the direct object in the case of the gerund, and using the gerundive in agreement with it. This is called the gerundive construction (466).
81. The supine in -um is used after verbs of motion to express purpose (467).
Caesar (Capitoline Museum).
GAUL at the time of CAESAR.

SCALE OF ROMAN MILES

0  20  40  60  80  100  150

Longitude 4° West from 2° Greenwich 0°
League of the Belgians against Caesar.

1. *Cum* ¹ esset Caesar in Citeriore ² Gallia, ita ³ uti supra ⁴ dēmōnstrāvimus, ⁵ crebrī ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur, ⁶ litterīsque ⁷ item Labiēni ⁸ certior ⁹ fīebat, omnēs Belgās, quam ¹⁰ tertiam esse Galliae partem dixeramus, ⁵ contrā populum Rōmānum conjūrāre ¹¹ obsidēsque inter ¹² sē dare. Conjūrātī rōndī hae erant causae: prīmum, quod verēbantur, nē, ¹³

The events narrated in Book II of Caesar’s Commentaries belong to the year 57 B.C. The Helvetic War and the War with Ariovistus, which are comprised in Book I, occurred in the previous year, 58 B.C.

¹ *cum esset*: 413.* ² *Citeriore Gallia*: northern Italy, a part of Caesar’s province. ³ *ita uti*: as; literally, so as. ⁴ *supra*: referring to the statement made at the close of Book I of the Commentaries. ⁵ *demonstrāvimus, dixeramus*: the editorial ‘we.’ ⁶ *afferēbantur, certior fīebat*: imperfect of repeated action, a very common use of the imperfect. ⁷ *litterīs*: 344. ⁸ *Labiēni*: Labienus had been left in charge of the winter quarters of Caesar’s army in the territory of the Sequani. ⁹ *certior fīebat, etc.:* was informed that all the Belgae . . . were combining . . . and exchanging hostages; literally, all the Belgae to combine and to give; conjurare and dare are principal clauses in indirect discourse depending on *certior fīebat*; 446. Belgas is subject accusative of the infinitives. ¹⁰ *quam*: who; referring to Belgas, but attracted to the gender and number of the predicate noun, partem; quam is the subject of esse. ¹¹ *conjurāre*: were forming a league, were combining. ¹² *inter se*: to each other, or, with dare, were exchanging; literally, between, or, among themselves. ¹³ *ne exercītus noster adducēretur*: that our army would be led; *ne adducēretur* is a Substantive Clause Developed from the Optative; 429.

*The numerical references are to the sections of this book.*

209
Caesar advances to meet the crisis.

2. Hic nuntiiis litterisque commotus Caesar duas legiones in Citeriore Gallia novas conscripsit et inita aestate, in Ulteriorem Galliam qui dederet, Quintum Pedium legatum misit. Ipse, cum primum pabuli copia esse inciperet, ad exercitum venit. Dat negotium Senonibus reliquisque Gallis, qui finitimt Belgis erant, ut ea, quae omnipacata Gallia: if all Gaul should be subdued; Ablative Absolute with the force of a condition; 359. 2 ad eos: against them. 6 partim qui ... partim qui: some of whom ... others of whom; literally, partly (by those) who ... partly (by those) who. The antecedent of qui is (ab) eis understood. 4 ut noluerant: just as they had been unwilling. 5 Germanos versari: referring to the presence of the Germans under Arionvistus in the preceding year; Germanos is the subject accusative of versari. 6 populi Romani ... ferebant: were loath to have the army of the Roman people winter in Gaul and become established (there). The infinitives are the object of ferebant; in Gallia limits both hiemare and inveterascere. 7 mobilitate, levitate: 345. 8 novis imperiis: a change of control; i.e. a change from Roman control; literally, new controls. For the dative, see 306. 2. The two classes of malcontents were (1) those who objected to the presence of a Roman army in Gaul; (2) those who on general principles desired a change. Both these classes of Gauls urged the Belgae to resist the Romans, thinking that Belgian success might free central Gaul also from Roman domination. 9 ab nonnullis: supply in sense, sollicitabantur. 10 imperio nostro: under our rule; Ablative of Attendant Circumstance. 11 inita aestate: at the beginning of summer; literally, summer having been begun; 359. 12 qui dederet: Relative Clause of Purpose; 400, a. The antecedent of qui is Pedium; with dederet understand as object eas, referring to legiones. 13 dat negotium: practically equivalent to he directed. 14 Belgis: 314. 15 uti cognoscant, certiorum faciant: to learn, to inform; Substantive Clauses Developed from the Volltive ('let them learn, let them inform'), dependent upon the idea of ordering involved in dat negotium; 424. 16 quae gerantur: gerantur is subjunctive in accordance with the general
apud eós gerantur, cognóscent sēque 1 de his rébus certió-
rem faciant. Hī 2 constanter 3 omnēs núntiāvērunt, manús 4
cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condúcī. Tum vērō dubi-
tandum 5 nōn existimāvit, quīn 6 ad eós 7 proficīscerētur.
Rē frūmentāriā comparāta, castra movēt diebusque 8 circiter 5
quīndecim ad finēs Belgārum pervēnit.

The Remī espouse the Roman cause.

3. Eō 9 cum dé imprōviso celeriusque 10 omni opinione
vēnisset, Rémi, quī proximī Galliae 11 ex Belgīs 12 sunt, ad
eum lēgātōs 13 Iccium et Andecumborium, prīmōs cīvitātīs,
mīsērunt, qui haec 14 dicēbant: "Nōs 15 nostrae omnia in 10
fidem 16 atque potestātem populī Rōmānī permittimus. Ne-
que 17 cum Belgīs reliquīs cōnsēnsimur neque contrā popul-
um Rōmānum omnīs conjūrāvīmus. Parāti sumus obsīdes
dare et imperāta tua facere et tē oppidīs 18 recipere et frō-
mentō cēterīisque rébus juvāre. Reliquī omnēs Belgae in 15
armīs sunt, Germānīque quī cis Rhēnum 19 incloant sēsē
cum his conjūnxērunt, tantusque est hōrum omnium furor,

principle that a clause dependent upon a subjunctive is itself attracted into
the subjunctive. The construction is called Subjunctive by Attraction.

1 se: him; literally, himself, referring to Caesar. 2 hi: i.e. the Senones and other neighbors of the Belgians. 3 constanter: not constantly, but
uniformly; all told the same story. 4 manus: bands, forces. 5 dubitantum (esse) non, etc.: concluded that he must not hesitate. 6 quin proficīscerētur: to set out. After verbs of doubting we regularly have quīn with
the subjunctive. 7 ad eos: against them. 8 diebus quīndecim: 365.
9 eo: the adverb. 10 celerius omni opinione: more swiftly than any one
expected; 339. 11 Galliae: 314. 12 ex Belgīs = Belgarum. 13 legatos: as
envoys; predicate accusative. 14 haec dicēbant: i.e. spoke as follows. 15 nos nostrae omnia: ourselves and all our possessions; objects of per-
mittimus; nostra is the possessive used as a noun; 371. 16 in fidem . . . per-
mittimus: put under the protection and power. The Remī had been vassals of
their powerful neighbors, the Suessiones, and apparently saw in the coming
of the Romans an opportunity to shake off the rule of their hated masters.
This seems the secret of their prompt submission to Caesar. 17 neque . . .
neque: neither . . . nor. 18 oppidis: in our towns; but the ablative is one
of Means; 344. 19 cis Rhēnum: i.e. to the west. Caesar is speaking from
the point of view of the province of Gaul. Some of the Germans had crossed
the Rhine and were at this time living on the west side of the river.
ut ne Suessiones quidem, fratres consanguineosque nostros, quae eodem jure et isdem legibus utuntur unumque magistratum nobiscum habent, deterrere potuerimus, quin cum his consentirent."

**Fighting strength of the Belgian tribes.**

4. Cum ab his quaereret, quae civitatis quantaeque in armis essent et quid in bello possent, sic reperiébat: Pléniique Belgae a Germânis orti sunt Rhênumque antiquitas traducit propter loci fertilitatem ibi consédèrent, Gallósque, qui ea loca incolébant, expulérent. Hi erant soli quos patrum memoriam, omni Galliá vexáta, Teuto- nós Cimbrosque intrá suós finés ingredi prohibérent; quæ ex re fíebat, ut eárum rērum memoriam magnam sibi auctoritatem in ré militári súmerent. De numero eorum Rémi omnia explóraerant, propinquitatibus et affinitatibus conjuncti, sciébant quantam multitudinem quisque in communi Belgárum concilió ad id

---

1 Suessiones: object of deterrere. 2 ne . . . quidem: not even. 3 fratres nostros: the Suessiones were really masters of the Remi. The statements of the envoys were not entirely frank. 4 jure, legibus: 344, 1. 5 unum magistratum nobiscum: i.e. the same ruler as we; the Latin always says nobiscum, not cum nobis. 6 potuerimus: 406. 7 quin . . . consentirent: from leaguing themselves with these; 425. 8 quae essent, possent: 431. 9 quid possent: how strong they were; literally, what they were able. 10 sic: as follows. 11 a Germanis orí sunt: this view is hardly correct; the Belgae were probably of Celtic origin. 12 Rhēnum: dependent on transit in composition in traducti. 13 hi: viz. the Belgae. 14 memoria: 365. 15 omni Gallia vexata: when all (the rest of) Gaul was ravaged; 359. 16 Teutonos Cimbrosque: for several years prior to 101 B.C. these barbarians had ravaged Gaul. They were finally crushed by Marius in 102 and 101 B.C. 17 ingredi: from entering; literally, to enter; the object of prohiberent. 18 prohiberent: subjunctive in a Clause of Characteristic; 405. 19 qua ex re: and from this circumstance; literally, from which circumstance. 20 fíebat: it happened. 21 ut súmerent: a Substantive Clause of Result; 430. It is subject of the impersonal fíebat. 22 memoria: 345. 23 sibi: with súmerent; 306, 1. 24 propinquitatis affinitatibus: by ties of blood and marriage. 25 conjuncti: viz. to the Belgae. 26 quantam pollicitus esset: 431. 27 quisque: i.e. each chieftain of the different tribes.
bellum pollicitus esset. Plurimum\(^1\) inter eos Bellovacī\(^2\) virtūte\(^3\) et auctoritāte et hominum numerō valēbant; hi centum milia hominum cōnāficere\(^4\) poterant; ex eō numerō sexāgintā milia pollicitī erant totīsusque belli imperium postulābant. Suessiōnēs erant finitimī Rēmōrum, et finēs 5 latissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēbant. Apud eōs Dīvītiāces nostrā etiam memoriā rēx fuerat, totūs Galliāe potentissimus, quī cum\(^5\) magnae partis\(^6\) hārum regiōnōrum, tum Britanniae imperium obtinuit. Nunc rēx Galba erat; ad hunc\(^7\) propter justitiam prōdentiamque\(^8\) summa\(^9\) totius 10 belli omnium voluntāte dēferēbātur; hi oppida duodecim habēbant et quīnquāgintā hominum\(^{10}\) milia pollicebantur; totidem\(^{11}\) Nerviī,\(^{12}\) quī maximē feri habentur\(^{13}\) longissimē-que absunt; quīdecim milia Atrebātēs, Ambiānī\(^{14}\) decem milia, Morīnī xxv milia, Menapiī vii milia, Caletī x milia,\(^{15}\) Veliocāsēs et Viromandūtī totidem, Aduatuī xīx milia; Condūsī, Eburōnēs, Caerōsī, Paemānī, quī\(^{16}\) uno nōminē\(^{16}\) Germānī\(^{17}\) appellantur, xl milia.

Caesar takes up a position on the Axona.

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus liberāliterque\(^{18}\) orātiōne prosecutus, omnem\(^{19}\) senātum ad sē convenire princīpīnum-

---

\(^{1}\) plurimum valēbant: had the greatest influence; literally, availed most.  
\(^{2}\) Bellovacī: their name survives in that of the modern town of Beauvais.  
\(^{3}\) virtūte, etc.: 354.  
\(^{4}\) cōnāficere: muster.  
\(^{5}\) cum... tum: not only... but also; literally, when... then, or, while... at the same time.  
\(^{6}\) partis: dependent upon imperium.  
\(^{7}\) ad hunc: upon him.  
\(^{8}\) prōdentiam: wisdom.  
\(^{9}\) summa: conduct, or direction.  
\(^{10}\) hominum: 322.  
\(^{11}\) totidem: viz. 50,000.  
\(^{12}\) Nervīī, Atrebātēs, etc.: as verb, understand pollicebantur from the preceding sentence.  
\(^{13}\) habentur: are regarded.  
\(^{14}\) Ambiānī, Caletī: these designations survive in the modern town names, Amiens, Calais.  
\(^{15}\) quī: referring only to the last four tribes.  
\(^{16}\) uno nōminē: i.e. by the general name.  
\(^{17}\) Germānī: these are apparently the Germānī qui cis Rhenum incolunt of chapter 3.  
\(^{18}\) liberāliter oratione prosecutus: having addressed them with friendly words; literally, having attended them generously in his words.  
\(^{19}\) senātum: some council of elders, corresponding roughly to the Roman Senate.
que liberös obsidēs\(^1\) ad sē addūcī jussit. Quae omnia ab hīs diligenter\(^2\) ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Dīvitiacum\(^3\) Haeduum magnopere\(^4\) cohorūtātus docet, quantō\(^5\) opere reī\(^6\) publicae commūnisque\(^7\) salūtis intersit, manūs\(^8\) hos-tiōm distinērī, nē\(^9\) cum tantā multitūdine unō tempore cōn-fīgendum sit. Id\(^10\) fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Haedui in finēs Bellovācorūm intrōdūxerint\(^11\) et eōrum agrōs populāri coeperīnt. Hīs datīs mandatīs, eum ab sē dīmittīt.

Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in unum locum coāctās\(^12\) ad sē venīre vidit, neque\(^13\) jam longē abesse, ab eius\(^14\) quōs mīserat, explōrātōribus et ab Rēmīs cognōvit, fūmen\(^15\) Aξonam, quod\(^16\) est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum finibus, exercitum trādūcere māturāvit atque ibi\(^17\) castra posuit. Quae\(^18\) rēs

---

\(^1\) obsides: *as hostages*; predicate accusative.
\(^2\) diligenter ad diem: *promptly to the day*.
\(^3\) Dīvitiacum Haeduum: *not to be confounded with the Dīvitiacus mentioned above, who was already dead. This Dīvitiacus was under obligations to Caesar for the recent liberation of the Haedui from the tyranny of Ariovistus, as described in Book 1; hence it was natural that Caesar should appeal to him for aid at this juncture.*
\(^4\) magnopere: *earnestly.*
\(^5\) quanto opere ... intersit: *how greatly it concerned the republic and the common safety;* 431. Though written as two words, *quanto opere* is practically as much an adverb as the preceding *magnopere.*
\(^6\) rei publicae, salūtis: *the genitive, see 331; rei publicae means the Roman state.*
\(^7\) communis: *i.e. of the Romans and the Haeduans.*
\(^8\) manus hostium distinērī: *for the hands of the enemy to be kept apart; manus is the subject accusative of distinērī, while distinērī itself is the subject of the impersonal *intersit.*
\(^9\) ne configendum sit: *lest it be necessary to fight; literally, *lest it have to be fought;* 400. The periphrastic conjugation is often thus used impersonally; 287.
\(^10\) id fierī posse: *that that could be done, namely, that the forces of the enemy could be kept from uniting; posse depends upon the idea of saying implied in the context; 446.*
\(^11\) introduxerīnt et coeperīnt: *subordinate clauses in indirect discourse; 446.*
\(^12\) coactas ad se venīre: *had been assembled and were coming.* For the participle as the equivalent of a coordinate clause, see 460, 3.
\(^13\) neque jam, etc.: *and learned that they were no longer far off. The two elements of neque must often thus be separated, and connected in translation with different parts of the sentence.*
\(^14\) ab eis explorātōribus: *limiting cognōvit.*
\(^15\) fūmen Aξonam: *governed by the preposition *trans in traducere. The *Aξōna is the modern Aisne.*
\(^16\) quod: *its gender is determined by fūmen, not by Aξonam.*
\(^17\) ibi: *i.e. at the point where he crossed the river. This was at Berry-au-Bac, where remains of Caesar's fortifications have been brought to light in modern times.*
\(^18\) quae res: *this action; subject of muniebat, reddebat, and efficiēbat.*
et latus unum castrorum ripis fluminis muniebat et, post eum quae erant, tuta ab hostibus reddubat et, commeatus ab Remis reliquisque civitatibus ut sine periculo ad eum portari possent, efficiebat. In eo flumine pons erat. Ibi praesidium ponit et in altera parte fluminis Quintum Tituriun Sabuinum legatum cum sex cohortibus relinquit; castra in altitudinem pedum duodecim vallae fossaque duodeviginti pedum muniri jubet.

Bibrax, a town of the Remi, attacked by the Belgae.

murusque defensoribus nūdatus est, testudine facta, portās succendunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fiēbat. Nam cum tanta multitudō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō consistendī potestās erat nullī. Cum finem oppugnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, summa nōbilitātē et grātiā inter suōs, quī tum oppidō praeferat, unus ex ēis, quī légātī de pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum mittit, nisi subsidium sibi submittatur, sese diūtius sustinēre non posse.

The Belgae abandon the assault on Bibrax.

7. Eō de mediā nocte Caesar ēisdem ducibus usus, quī nūntiī ab Iccio vēnerant, Numidās et Cretās sagittārios et funditōrēs Bālearēs subsidio oppidānīs mittit;

---

1 defensoribus: Ablative of Separation. 2 testudine facta: having made a testudo; testudo was the name given to a special military formation in which the shields of the soldiers overlapped one another like the scales of a tortoise. 3 quod: i.e. this mode of attack. 4 tum: on the present occasion. 5 facile fiēbat: was easily put into operation. 6 conicerent: the plural, since multitudō is a collective noun. 7 consistendi: the gerund, used as Objective Genitive with potestas. 8 potestas erat nullī: no one had the ability, no one could; nullī is Dative of Possession; 312. 9 Iccius Rēmus: Iccius, one of the Remī. 10 summa nōbilitātē: of the highest rank. Ablative of Quality; 352. 11 suōs: his countrymen. 12 oppido: dative; indirect object of praeferat; 306, 3. 13 legāti: as envoy; predicate nominative with vēnerant, limiting qui. His embassy is referred to on p. 211, line 9. 14 ad eum: i.e. to Caesar. 15 sibi, sese: probably to be taken as plurals referring to the Remī. 16 submittatur: subordinate clause in indirect discourse; 446. 17 sustinere: here used absolutely in the sense of hold out. 18 posse: principal clause in indirect discourse, depending upon the idea of saying involved in nūntium mittit; 446. 19 ēo: i.e. to Bibrax. 20 de: about. 21 ēisdem ducibus usus: employing the same men as guides; ducibus is in predicate relation to ēisdem. Note that usus here has the force of a present participle, i.e. it denotes action occurring at the same time as that of the main verb,—using. 22 Numidās et Cretās: often mentioned as bowmen; the words are here used as adjectives; Cretās is an irregular form (Greek accusative). 23 Bālearēs: the inhabitants of the Bālearic Islands were famous in antiquity for their skill as slingers. The story went that the Bālearic boys were allowed no dinner until they could bring it down with their slings. 24 subsidio: Dative of Purpose; 313.
quorum adventū et Rēmīs cum spē défensionis studium propugnandī accessit, et hostibus eadem de causa spēs potiundī oppidi discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vicīs aedificiisque, quō adire potuerant, incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiis contendērunt et a mīlibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque ignibus significābatur, amplius mīlibus passuum octō in lātitūdinem patēbant.

Caesar prepares for an engagement.

8. Caesar prīmō et propter multitūdinem hostium et propter eximiam opinīōnem virtūtis proelīō supersedēre statuit; cotīdiē tamen equestribus proelīis, quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent, periclitābatur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse īnferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castrīs ad aciem instruendam nātūrā opportūnō atque idoneō, quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex plānitiē ēdi-

1 et... et: on the one hand... and on the other. 2 cum spē defensionis: along with the hope of a (successful) defence. 3 hostibus: from the enemy; the dative, as here, sometimes denotes separation. 4 spes potiundi oppidi: hope of gaining the town; the gerundive construction; 466. The ending -undi for -endi sometimes occurs in the gerund and gerundive. 5 quo: the adverb, equivalent to ad quae, referring to vicīs and aedificiis. 6 omnibus copiis: Ablative of Accompaniment without cum. 7 a mīlibus, etc.: less than two miles off; a is here an adverb meaning off, away; mīlibus is Ablative of Degree of Difference, 351; minus is introduced without affecting the construction of the sentence; 339, 1. 8 amplius mīlibus: mīlibus is here Ablative of Comparison with the adverb amplius. 9 et... et: both... and. 10 opinīōnem virtūtis: their reputation for bravery. 11 proelīō supersedere: to refrain from battle; proelīo is Ablative of Separation; 337. 12 quid hostis virtūte posset: what the enemy's might was; literally, what the enemy availed in valor. 13 locō... idoneō: since there was a place, etc.; Ablative Absolute, equivalent to a causal clause; 359. 14 ad aciem instruendam: to be joined in thought with opportuno atque idoneō. 15 quod is collis, etc.: explaining why the place was suitable for drawing up a line of battle; namely, there was rising ground of just sufficient width for an army in battle array, while steep declivities protected the flanks.
tus\textsuperscript{1} tantum\textsuperscript{2} adversus in lātītūdinem patēbat, quantum\textsuperscript{3} locī acīs iđrŭctā occupāre poterat, atquē ex utrāque parte\textsuperscript{4} lateris dējectūs\textsuperscript{5} habēbat\textsuperscript{6} et īn frontem\textsuperscript{7} lēniter fastīgā-tus paulātīm ād plānītīem redībat, ab utrōque\textsuperscript{8} latere īēs collīs trānsversam\textsuperscript{9} fossam obdūxit circīter passuum\textsuperscript{10} quad-ringentōrum et ād extrēmās\textsuperscript{11} fossās castella cōnstituit ibi-que tormenta\textsuperscript{12} collocāvit, nē, cum aciēm iīnstrūxisset,\textsuperscript{13} hostēs, quod tantum multitūdine poterant,\textsuperscript{14} āb lateribus\textsuperscript{15} pugnāntēs\textsuperscript{16} suōs\textsuperscript{17} circumvenire possent. Hoc factō, duā-bus legiōnibus,\textsuperscript{18} quās proxīmē cōnscripserat, īn castrīs reūctīs, ut, sī quō opus esset,\textsuperscript{19} subsidiō\textsuperscript{20} dūcī possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs ērī castrīs in aciē cōnstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ēx castrīs ēductās\textsuperscript{21} iīnstrūxerant.

\textsuperscript{1} editus: being elevated.  
\textsuperscript{2} tantum adversus in latitudinem, etc.: was as wide in front (i.e. on the side toward the enemy, — the west) as a line of battle when drawn up could fill; tantum is an Accusative of Extent of Space, 301; adversus is an adjective agreeing with collīs, the subject of patebat; loci is a Genitive of the Whole (322) with quantum; we should have expected it to limit tantum.  
\textsuperscript{3} quantum: object of occupāre.  
\textsuperscript{4} ex utrāque parte: on each side.  
\textsuperscript{5} lateris dejectūs: lateral declivities.  
\textsuperscript{6} habēbat: the subject is still collīs.  
\textsuperscript{7} īn frontem lēniter, etc.: and in front, sloping gently, gradually returned to the plain. Remember that the front is the western side.  
\textsuperscript{8} ab utrōque: the principal clause of this long sentence begins here.  
\textsuperscript{9} transversam fossam: at right angles, namely, to the line of the eminence.  
\textsuperscript{10} passuum quadrīngentōrum: four hundred paces (long); Genitive of Quality; 323.  
\textsuperscript{11} ad extrēmas fossas: at the ends of the ditches; 373.  
\textsuperscript{12} tormenta: engines for hurling missiles, such as javelins or heavy stones. See pp. 9, 11.  
\textsuperscript{13} iīnstruxisset: Subjunctive by Attraction to possēt; see note on p. 210, line 13.  
\textsuperscript{14} poterant: as the explanation of the writer, this clause stands in the indicative.  
\textsuperscript{15} āb lateribus: on the flanks.  
\textsuperscript{16} pugnāntēs: limiting suōs.  
\textsuperscript{17} suōs: his men.  
\textsuperscript{18} duābus legiōnibus quas proxīmē cōnscripserat: i.e. the thirteenth and fourteenth legions enrolled in Hither Gaul in the spring of this year; see chapter 1. As usual Caesar spares his raw troops, holding them back as reserves for a critical emergency.  
\textsuperscript{19} sī quō opus esset: if it was necessary for them to be led anywhere; quō is the indefinite adverb, limiting dūcī to be supplied. This dūcī (or, with subject accusative, cos dūcī) is the subject of esset; esset is attracted into the subjunctive.  
\textsuperscript{20} subsidiō: Dative of Purpōse; 313.  
\textsuperscript{21} ēductās iīnstrūxerant: i.e. had led them forth and drawn them up; 460, 3.
The Belgae attempt to cut off Caesar's supplies.

9. Palpis erat non\(^1\) magna inter\(^2\) nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc si nostri transirent,\(^3\) hostes exspectabant; nostri autem, si\(^4\) ab illis initium transeundi fieret, ut\(^5\) impeditos aggrederentur, parati in armis erant. Interim proeli\(^6\) eques\(^i\) inter duas acies contendebatur. Ubi\(^7\) neutri transeundi initium faciunt, secundio\(^7\) equitum proelio nostris,\(^8\) Caesar suos in castra reduxit. Hostes pro-tinus ex eodem loco ad flumen Axonam contendunt, quod\(^9\) esse post nostra castra demonstratum est. Ibi, vadis repertis, partem suarum copiarum truducere cognate sunt, eodem consilio,\(^10\) ut,\(^11\) si possent,\(^12\) castellum,\(^13\) cui praeparet Quintus Titurius legatus, expugnarent, pontemque intersecinrent; si\(^14\) minus potuisissent, agris Römorum popularentur,\(^15\) quae

\(^1\) non magna: i.e. small.  
\(^2\) inter nostrum . . . exercitum: between our army and that of the enemy. The possessive pronoun nostrum is made coordinate with the genitive hostium.  
\(^3\) si nostri transirent: indirect question with si; a rare usage.  
\(^4\) si . . . fieret: in case a beginning should be made. The clause is subordinate to aggrederentur, which in turn is subordinate to parati.  
\(^5\) ut impeditos aggrederentur: that they might attack them encumbered; impeditos limits eos understood, referring to the enemy.  
\(^6\) proelio . . . contendebatur: a cavalry battle was in progress; literally, it was being contended in a cavalry battle.  
\(^7\) secundio: although the battle was more favorable; Ablative Absolute; 359.  
\(^8\) nostris: with secundio; 314.  
\(^9\) quod esse, etc.: which, it has been shown, was behind our camp; literally, which to be behind our camp has been shown; quod is the subject of esse; esse is subject of the impersonal demonstratum est.  
\(^10\) eo consilio: with this object.  
\(^11\) ut expugnarent: a Substantive Clause of Purpose, in apposition with eo consilio.  
\(^12\) si possent, si potuisissent: Subjunctive by Attraction.  
\(^13\) castellum: at the southern end of the bridge. Their plan was to cross the river and surprise Sabinus from the rear.  
\(^14\) si minus potuisissent: if they should not be able.  
\(^15\) popularentur, prohiberent: ut must be supplied with these. The clauses are further appositive of eo consilio.  
\(^16\) magno usui: Dative of Purpose.  
\(^17\) ad bellum gerendum: for waging war.  
\(^18\) commeatique: commodat is an Ablative of Separation.
The Belgae are defeated and disperse to their homes with further losses.

10. Caesar certior\(^1\) factus ab Titúrió, omnem equitáthum et levis\(^2\) armáturae Numidás, funditóres sagittáriósque ponte\(^3\) tradúcit atque ad eós\(^4\) contendit. Æciter in eo locó pugnátum est. Hostés impeditóes nostri in flúmine aggressí, magnum eórum numerum occíderunt; per\(^5\) eórum corpora reliquóes audácissimé\(^6\) transitre cónantés\(^7\) multitudíne télórum repulérunt; prímós, qui transierant, equitát\(^8\) circumventós interfecerunt.

Hostés, ubi et de expugnandó oppidó\(^9\) et de flúmine tránsseundó spem\(^10\) sē fefellisse intelléxerunt neque\(^11\) nostrés in locum intíquórem prógređí pugnandí causá vidérunt, atque ipsós réś\(^12\) frúmentaría déficere coeptí, cónsilió convocató, cóstituérunt, optimum\(^13\) esse, domum suam\(^14\) quemque revertí, et, quórum\(^15\) in finés primum Rómani exercitum intróduxissent,\(^16\) ad eós défendéndós undique conveníre, ut\(^17\) potius in suis quam in aliénís finibus décertarent et

---

\(^1\) certior factus: i.e., having been informed of the situation.
\(^2\) levis armáturae Numidás: light-armed Numidians; literally, Numidians of light equipment; Genitive of Quality; 323.
\(^3\) ponte: by the bridge; Ablative of the Way By Which.
\(^4\) ad eos contendit: the Belgians were to the west of the bridge, probably about two miles from Berry-au-Bac.
\(^5\) per: over.
\(^6\) audácissimé: Caesar often pays such tributes as this to the bravery of his antagonists. It may be only an indirect way of enhancing the glory of his own achievements.
\(^7\) cónantés: agreeing with reliquóes.
\(^8\) equitát circumventós interfecerunt: they surrounded with the cavalry and cut to pieces; 460, 3.
\(^9\) oppidó: Bibræx; see chapters 6, 7.
\(^10\) spem se fefellisse: that hope had disappointed them; 446.
\(^11\) neque: and... not, as often.
\(^12\) res frúmentaría déficere coeptí: the Gauls were inexperienced in systematic campaigning. Ordinarily they provided insufficient supplies for lengthy operations, and hence were often forced to disperse prematurely to their homes. In the present instance Caesar was thus able to attack and subjugate each tribe singly.
\(^13\) optimum esse, etc.: that it was best for each to return to his own home; esse is the object of constituerunt; optimum is a predicate adjective, limiting reverti, the subject of esse.
\(^14\) domum suam: 302.
\(^15\) quórum: its antecedent is eōs in the next line.
\(^16\) intróduxissent: Subjunctive by Attraction; see p. 210, line 13.
\(^17\) ut décertarent, uteren\ý: purpose clauses. Note that décerto means more than merely 'contend'; it implies fighting to a finish.
domesticis copiis 1 rei frumentariae uterentur. Ad eam sententiam 2 cum 3 reliquis causis haec quoque ratio eos deduxit, quod 4 Divitiacum 5 atque Haeduos finibus 6 Bellovacorum appropinquare cognoverant. His 7 persuadere, ut 8 diutius morarentur neque 9 suis auxilium ferrent, non 5 poterat.

11. Ea re constituta, secundae vigiliae magni cum strepitu ac tumultu castris cresssi, nullo 10 certo ordine neque imperio, cum 11 sibi quinque primum locum pateret et domum 12 pervenire properaret, fecerunt, 13 ut consimilis 10 fugae 14 profectio videretur. Hac re statim Caesar per speculatores cognita, iuridias veritus, 15 quod, quod 16 de causa discederent, nondum perspexerat, exercitum 17 equitatumque castris 18 continuat. Prima luce confirmata 19 re ab exploratoribus, omnem equitatum, qui 21 novissimum 15 agmen moraretur, praemisit.

1 copiis: for the ablative, see 344, I. 2 sententiam: resolution. 3 cum reliquis causis: along with other reasons, to be taken with haec quoque ratio. 4 quod cognoverant: the fact that they knew; explanatory of haec ratio. Note that the pluperfect of coegosco has the force of an imperfect of the verb 'know.' 5 Divitiacum... appropinquare: i.e. Divitiacus was complying with Caesar's request, made above, p. 214, line 6. 6 finibus: for the dative, see 306, 3. 7 his persuadere non poterat: these (the Bellovaci) could not be persuaded; literally, it could not be persuaded to these. Verbs that govern the dative in the active, can be used in the passive only impersonally. 8 ut morarentur: to delay; a substantive clause dependent upon persuadere. 9 neque... ferrent: and to forego lending aid to their countrymen; literally, and (-que) not (-ne) to lend. 10 nullo certo ordine, etc.: without any definite arrangement and direction; Ablative of Attendant Circumstance. 11 cum peteret: a causal clause. 12 domum: 302. 13 fecerunt ut... videretur: they made their departure seem; etc.; literally, brought about that their departure seemed; ut videretur is a Substantive Clause of Result, the object of fecerunt; 430. 14 fugae: dative. 15 veritus: fearing. 16 qua de causa discederent: why they were withdrawing; indirect question; 431. 17 exercitum: here the infantry as contrasted with the cavalry. 18 castris: with teneo and contineo, the camp is considered as the means rather than the place; hence the simple ablative. 19 confirmata re: when the fact was established, namely, of their retreat. 20 exploratoribus: scouts; different from the spies (speculatores) who mingled among the enemy in disguise. 21 qui moraretur: Relative Clause of Purpose; 400, a.
His Quintum Pedium et Lüciun Aurunculéium Cottam légátos præfécit; Titum Labiēnum légá́tum cum légiónibus tribus subsequi jussit. Hi² novissimōs adorti et multa mília³ passuum prósecúti magnam multitūdinem eōrum fugientium⁴ concidérent, cum⁵ ab extrémō⁶ agmine, ad quōs⁷ ventum erat, cónsisterent fortiterque impetum nostrórum militum sustinérent, priōrēs,⁸ quod abesse à periculō vidérentur⁹ neque úllā necessitāte neque imperió continérentur, exaudítō clámōre,¹⁰ perturbátīs ordínibus, omnēs in fugā sibi praesidiúm pônerent.¹¹ Ita sine úllō periculō tantam eōrum multitūdinem nostrā interfécérunt, quantum fuit diēi spatium; sub occāsūm sólis sequé dēstitérunt séque in castra, ut erat imperátum, recépérunt. Noviodunum surrenders.

12. Postridie ejus diē Caesar, priusquam se hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā recipēret, in finēs Suessiōnum, qui proximi Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et magnō itinere

1 his: plural, as referring to the collective noun equitatum. For the dative, see 306, 3. ² hi: referring to the infantry and cavalry just mentioned. ³ multa mília: 301. ⁴ fugientium: as they fled. ⁵ cum cónsisterent, etc.: cum is causal, and introduces the reason for the great slaughter, namely, only those on the rear of the Belgian host stood their ground, while the rest, instead of joining in the defence, hurried on madly in quest of safety. ⁶ ab extrémō agmine: at the rear. ⁷ ad quos ventum erat: the antecedent of quos is ei understood, the subject of cónsisterent,—those to whom they had come; literally, to whom it had been come. ⁸ priōres = sed priōres (those in front); Asyndeton; priōres is the subject of ponérent. ⁹ viderentur, contínerentur: Subjunctive by Attraction. ¹⁰ exaudito clámōre, perturbátīs ordínibus: two Ablatives Absolute; but the first is the cause of the second, i.e. the ranks were thrown into disorder at the sound of the shouting. ¹¹ sibi: Dative of Reference. ¹² praesidiúm ponérent: sought (literally, placed) security. ¹³ tantam . . . quantum: as many as time allowed; literally, as great a number as was the duration of the day,—a careless and inexact comparison. ¹⁴ postridie ejus diē: a curious idiom for 'on the following day'; literally, 'on the following day of that day.' ¹⁵ priusquam recipērent: with antequam and priusquam, the subjunctive is used to denote anticipation or expectancy. Note that se recipērent here means 'recovered.' It is used differently in line 13 above. ¹⁶ Remis: dependent upon proximi; 314. ¹⁷ magno itinere: by a rapid march.
ad oppidum Noviodúnum\(^1\) contendit. Id ex itinere\(^2\) oppugnāre cōnātus, quod vacuām\(^3\) ab défensōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitudinem fossae mūrīque altitudinem, paucis\(^4\) defendentibus, expugnāre nōn potuit. Castrīs mūnītīs, vīnēās\(^5\) agerē\(^6\) quaeque\(^7\) ad oppugnandum īsūs\(^8\) erant, comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitūdō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vīnēs ad oppidum āctīs, aggerē jactō\(^8\) turribusque\(^9\) constitūtīs, magnitudinis\(^10\) operum, quae neque viderant ante\(^11\) Gallī neque audierant,\(^12\) et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditōne mittunt et, petentibus\(^13\) Rēmīs, ut cōnservārentur,\(^14\) impetrant.

---

\(^1\) Noviodūnum: the name means 'Newtown.'
\(^2\) ex itinere: i.e. without stopping to institute a regular siege.
\(^3\) vacuām ab défensōribus: lacking defenders; vacuām is in predicate agreement with the omitted subject of esse; défensōribus is an Ablative of Separation; 337.
\(^4\) paucis defendentibus: Ablative Absolute with adversative force, —though few defended it.
\(^5\) vīnēas: movable sheds or mantlets, to protect the soldiers as they approached the walls of the enemy. Their dimensions are given as eight feet broad, seven feet high, and sixteen feet long.
\(^6\) agerē: to move up, advance.
\(^7\) quaeque = et quae; the antecedent of quae is ea understood, the object of comparāre.
\(^8\) aggerē jactō: when an agger or siege-terrace had been thrown up. This was begun at some distance from the enemy’s walls and gradually approached them at right angles as its construction advanced, the end toward the enemy being protected by sheds and other defences. It was built as high as the hostile wall against which it was intended, and when completed furnished an easy avenue of approach to the battlements of the besieged.
\(^9\) turribus constitūtīs: these towers were called turres ambulatoriae, literally, ‘walking towers,’ so designated because they were on rollers and could be moved from place to place. In the construction of an agger they were often of service in protecting the workmen by harassing the enemy. These towers were of several stories and sometimes rose to a height of ninety feet. They were supplied with battering rams and engines for hurling heavy missiles against the enemy. See p. 4.
\(^10\) magnitudinis operum: dependent upon permōtī.
\(^11\) ante: the adverb.
\(^12\) audierant: had heard of.
\(^13\) petentibus Rēmis: since the Remi begged.
\(^14\) ut cōnservārentur: a substantive clause, object of petentibus; 424.
Submission of the Bellovaci.

13. Caesar obsidibus\(^1\) acceptis primis civitatis atque ipsius Galbae regis duobus filiis, armisque omnibus ex oppidō traditis, in deditionem Suessionēs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacos ducit. Qui\(^2\) cum se suaque omnia in oppidum Brātus panicum contulissent, atque ab eo oppidō Caesar cum exercitu circiter mīlia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs majorēs\(^3\) nātū ex oppidō egressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepēreunt, sē sē in ejus fidem ac potestātem venire neque\(^5\) contra populum Rōmānum armīs contendere.\(^6\)

Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi poneret, puerī\(^7\) mulieresque ex mūro, passīs\(^8\) manibus suo more,\(^9\) pācem ab Rōmānōs petierunt.

14. Prō his\(^10\) Divitiācus (nam post discessum\(^11\) Belgarum, dīmissīs Haeduōrum cōpiās, ad eum reverterat) facit\(^12\)

verba: Bellovacos omnī tempore in fidē\(^13\) atque amicitia civitatis Haeduae fuisse; impulsōs\(^14\) ab suis principibus, qui dicerent,\(^15\) Haeduōs, a Caesare in servitūtem redactōs,\(^16\) omnēs indignitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et\(^17\) ab Haeduīs dēfēcisse et\(^17\) populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī\(^18\) ejus

\(^1\) obsidibus acceptis prīmis, etc.: after their leading men had been received as hostages; obsidibus is in predicate relation to prīmis and liberis.

\(^2\) qui cum: when they.

\(^3\) majorēs nātū: the elders; nātū is an Ablative of Specification.

\(^4\) sē sē . . . venire: that they submitted to (literally, came into) his protection and power.

\(^5\) neque: and . . . not.

\(^6\) contendere: we might have expected the future here; but the present is more vivid, —they did not fight.

\(^7\) puerī: children, including both girls and boys.

\(^8\) passīs: from pando.

\(^9\) suo more: according to their custom; to be joined closely with passīs manibus. Stretching out the hands was their way of indicating submission.

\(^10\) his: the Bellovaci.

\(^11\) post discessum Belgarum: i.e. after the different tribes had dispersed owing to the failure of their supplies, as explained above, p. 221, line 6.

\(^12\) facit verba: spoke.

\(^13\) in fide atque amicitia civitatis: i.e. had been loyal and friendly.

\(^14\) impulsōs: as indicated by the position, the emphasis of the sentence rests on this word, —it was because they had been impelled by their chiefs, . . . that they had revolted, etc.

\(^15\) dicerent: subordinate clause in indirect discourse.

\(^16\) redactōs: the participle.

\(^17\) et . . . et: both . . . and.

\(^18\) qui: its antecedent is eos understood, the subject of profugisse.
cōnsilī prīncipēs fuissent, quod 1 intellegerent, quantam calamitātem civitātī intelissent; 2 in Britanniam profūgisse. Petere nōn sōlum Bellovacōs, sed etiam prō hīs Haeduōs, ut suā 3 elēmentīā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs 4 útātur. 5 Quod sī fēcerit, 6 Haeduōrum auctoritātem apud omnēs Belgās ampliēcāturum, 7 quōrum 8 auxilīs atque opibus, sī 9 qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōnsuerint. 10

15. Caesar honōris 11 Divitiāci atque Haeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidēm receptūrum et cōnservāturum dīxit; et quod erat cīvitās 12 magnā 13 inter Belgās auctoritāte atque hominum multiētūdine 14 praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trādītīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō 15 collātīs, ab eō locō in finēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit; quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt.

Description of the Nervīī.

Eōrum 16 finēs Nervīī attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā 15 mōribusque Caesar cum quaerēret, sic 17 reperiebat: Nūllum aditum esse ad eōs 18 mercātōribus; 19 nihil patī 20 vīni 21

1 quod: causal. 2 intulissent: this would be subjunctive (of indirect question) even in the direct discourse. 3 suā: his usual, or, his well known. 4 in eos: toward them. 5 utātur: this and the remaining subjunctives of this chapter are in the present and perfect tenses, instead of the imperfect and pluperfect, as though dependent upon a principal tense, thus giving greater vividity to the narration (repraesentatio). 6 quod sī fēcerit: if he do this; fēcerit represents a future perfect of direct discourse. 7 ampliēcāturum (esse): the subject is eum understood, referring to Caesar. 8 quōrum: its antecedent is Belgās. 9 sī qua: whatever. 10 consuerint: equivalent to a present in the sense of be wont; its subject is ei understood, referring to the Haeduīī. 11 honorīs Divitiāci causa: as a mark of honor to Divitiacus. Caesar's policy was to enhance the prestige of the Haeduīī, by attributing this act of pardon to the influence of Divitiacus. 12 civitas: namely, of the Bellovacī. 13 magna auctoritāte: Ablative of Quality; 352. 14 multiētūdine: Ablative of Specification. 15 oppido: Bratuspantium. 16 eōrum: namely, of the Ambiānī; the word is emphatic by position. 17 sic: as follows. 18 ad eos: limiting aditum. 19 mercātōribus: Dative of Possession, i.e. merchants had no access. 20 pati: as subject understand eōs, referring to the Nervīīī. 21 vīni: Genitive of the Whole with nihil,—no wine.
The Nervii and their allies plan to attack Caesar by surprise.

16. Cum per eorum finēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvis, Sabim flūmen a castrīs suis nōn amplius mīlia passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nerviōs cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā cum Atrebatibus et Viromandūs, fīmitimīs suis (nam ĕs utrisque persuāserant, utī eandem bellī fortūnam experīrentur); exspectārī etiam ab ĕs Aduatūcorum cōpiās atque esse in itīnerε mulieres, quique per actātem ad pugnam inūtilēs vidērentur, in eum locum conjēcisse, quo propter palūdēs exercītū aditus nōn esset.

17. Hīs rebus cognītīs, explōrātōrēs centurīōnēsque praemittit, qui locum idōneum castīns delīgant. Cum ex dēditiciis Belgīs reliquīisque Gallīs complūrēs Caesarem
secútì unà iter facerent, quidam ex his, ut postea ex captivís cognitum est, eórum diérum consuetudine itinerís nostri exercitús perspectá, nocte ad Nerviós pervénérunt atque hís dēmōnstráruit, inter singulás legiōnēs impedimentórum magnum, numerum intercedère, neque esse quíquam negoti, cum prīma legió in castra vénisset reliquaeque legiōnēs magnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcínis adoríri; quà pulsa impedimentísque direptis, futūrum, ut reliquae contrá cōnsistere non auderent.

Adjuvábat etiam eórum cōnsilium quí rem déférēbant, quod Nervi antiquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hoc tempus eī rerē student, sed, quicquid possunt, pedestribus valent cōpis), quà facilius fīnitiōrum equitātūm, si praedandī causā ad eōs vénissent, impedīrent, tenerís arboribus incísās atque inflexīs crēbrisque

1 una: the adverb.
2 eorum diérum consuetudine, etc.: having noticed the customary march of our army during those days; consuetudine is limited by diérum and itinerís, while itinerís is further limited by exercitús.
3 magnum numerum: a large amount.
4 intercedere: i.e. was placed between.
5 neque esse quíquam negoti: and there was no difficulty; negoti is predicate accusative with esse, the subject of esse being adorīri in line 8, below; negoti is Genitive of the Whole.
6 in castra: the Romans regularly constructed a fortified camp when they came to the end of the day's march.
7 vénisset, abessent: corresponding respectively to the future perfect and future of direct statement.
8 sub sarcínis: i.e. carrying the heavy packs of rations, tools, and cooking utensils regularly borne by every soldier.
9 quà pulsa, etc.: the Ablatives Absolute here denote means,—by routing this, etc.
10 futūrum ut non auđerent: equivalent to non ausuras esse; literally, it would be (happen) that they would not dare; ut non auđerent is a Substantive Clause of Result, the subject of futūrum (esse).
11 reliquae: namely, legiōnes.
12 contra: the adverb.
13 adjuvábat etiam eórum cōnsilium, etc.: a thing that also supported the advice of these was the fact that, etc.; literally, it supported their advice that the Nervi, etc.; adjuvábat is emphatic, and hence heads the sentence.
14 cum: here causal.
15 nihil: for the accusative, see note on p. 217, line 12.
16 neque enim: nor indeed; enim did not originally mean for, but now, indeed. This meaning has for the most part disappeared in classical Latin, but survives in a few phrases like neque enim, sed enim, etc.
17 eī rerē: i.e. cavalry forces; for the dative, see 366. 2.
18 quo impedīrent: in purpose clauses quo is regularly used, if there is a comparative in the sentence.
19 vénissent: Subjunctive by Attraction.
20 arboribus incísis,
in \text{latitudinem} rāmis ēnātīs et rubīs sentibusque interjectis, \textit{ut} \textit{instar} mūri hae saepe\textit{sa} munimentum praeberent, quō nōn modo nōn intrārī, sed nē perspicī quidem posset. His rēbus cum iter agminis nostri impedīrētur, nōn omissendum sibi consilium Nervīi existimārēunt.

\textit{Site of Caesar's camp on the Sabis.}

18. locī nātūra erat haec, \textit{quem locum nostri castēris dēlēgerant}. Collis ab summō aequaliter dēclīvis ad flūmen Sabim, quod supra nōmināvimus, vergebat. Ab eo flūmine pari acclīvitātē collis nāscēbatur adversus huic et contrārius, passūs cireiter ducentōs infimus apertus, ab superiore parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eas silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē cons-

\textit{etc.}: translate the Ablatives Absolute by clauses introduced by \textit{after, — after cutting into, etc.}

\textit{1 in latitudinem: sidewise}. The young trees had merely been cut enough to make it possible to bend them over to a horizontal position without destroying their vitality. \textit{2 interjectis: i.e. planted in between. 3 effecerant: its subject is Nervii, p. 227, l. 11. The clause \textit{quod effecerant is the subject of the impersonal \textit{adjuvabat}. 4 ut praebērent: Substantive Clause of Result, the object of \textit{effecerant. 5 instar mūri: like a wall; instar is in apposition with munimentum. 6 hae saepe\textit{sa: the farmers of this locality fence in their fields to-day with hedges of this same kind. 7 quo: into which; the adverb. 8 nōn modo . . . posset: which not only could not be penetrated, but not even seen through; literally, into which it not only could not be entered, etc.; intrari and perspicērī are used impersonally. 9 omissendum: understand esse. 10 sibi: by them; Dative of Agency; 311. 11 consilium: i.e. the project of attacking the first legion. 12 haec: explained by what follows. 13 quem locum . . . dēlegerant: the spot chosen was on the heights near the modern hamlet of Neuf Mesnil. The ante-
cedent is repeated in the relative clause, as often in Caesar. 14 castēris: Dative of Purpose. 15 aequaliter: evenly, regularly. 16 ad flūmen: with vergebat. 17 quod: the gender is determined by flūmen, not by Sabim. 18 pari acclīvitātē: Ablative of Quality; i.e. the second hill had the same slope as the first. 19 nāscēbatur: rose. 20 adversus et contrārius: opposite and across (the stream). 21 huic: for the dative, see 314. 22 infimus: at the base. 23 apertus: as opposed to the wooded portion above. 24 ab superiore parte: at the top.}
The Belgae attack the camp.

19. Caesar equitātū praemissō, subsequebātur omnibus cōpiis; sed ratīō ordōque agminis aliter sē habēbat, ac Belgae ad Nervios détulerant. Nam quod hostibus appropinquābat, consuetūdīine sū Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcebāt; post eās tōtīus exercītūs impediēmenta collocārāt; inde duae legiōnēs, quae proxīmē cōnscriptae erant, tōtum agmen claudēbant praevidēque impediēmentōs erant. Equītēs nostri cum funditōribus sagittāriīisque flūmen trānsgressī eum hostiūm equitātū proelium commiērunt. Cum sē īli identidem in silvās ad suōs recipērent ac rūrsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent neque nostri longius, quam quem ad finem porrectā loca aperta per tinēbant, ēdentēs insequi audērent, interim legiōnēs sex, quae prīmae vēnerant, opere dimēnsō castra mūnire coeērunt.

Ubi prīma impediēmenta nostri exercītūs ab eīs, quī in
The Romans are unprepared, but their discipline stands them in good stead.

20. Caesar omnia unō tempore erant agenda: vexillum prōpōnendum, signum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandi militēs, quē paulō longius aggeris petendi

2 visa sunt: were seen. 2 quod tempus... convenerat: the moment which had been agreed upon. Grammatically tempus is the subject of convenerat, but logically it is in apposition with the general idea involved in ubi...visa sunt. 3 inter eos: this phrase modifies convenerat. 4 committendi proeli: for joining battle. Note that proeli limits tempus, and committendi is the gerundive agreeing with proeli. 5 sese confirmaverant: had determined (to do). 6 nostros equites: those who had crossed the river with the slingers and archers. 7 et...et: correlative use; note the emphasis of the repetition. 8 in manibus nostris: close beside us. The distance between the two camps was about three-quarters of a mile. Probably not more than ten minutes elapsed, after the Gauls emerged from cover, before they reached the Romans. 9 viderentur: were seen, like visa sunt above. 10 adverso colle: up the hill; literally, the hill being against them; Ablative Absolute. 11 occupati erant: were busied; occupati is here an adjective. 12 Caesar...agenda: by Caesar, all things had to be done at one time; Caesar is Dative of Agency; the emphasis on the word is indicated by its position. 13 vexillum: the crimson banner set up as a signal for battle. 14 prōpōnendum, dandum: with these and the following gerundives erat or erant must be supplied. 15 signum tuba dandum: i.e. the signal for forming in battle array. 16 ab opere: i.e. the camp, which they had begun to fortify. 17 qui: as antecedent supply ei, the subject of arcessendi (erant). 18 paulō longius: i.e. somewhat further than usual. 19 aggeris: here not in the sense of embankment, but of the materials used in constructing the rampart of the camp, such as timber, stone, etc.
causa proesserant, arcessendi, acies instruenda, milites co-
hortandi, signum dandum. Quaerum rerum magnam par-
tem temporis brevitatis et incursus hostium impeditat.
His difficultatibus duae res erant subsidio, scientia atque
usus militum, quod superiornibus proelius exercitati,
quid fieri oportaret, non minus commodè ipsi sibi prae-
scribere, quam ab aliis doceri poterant, et quod ab opere
singulisque legionibus singulos legatos Caesar discedere
nisi munitis castris vetuerat. Hi propter propinquitatem
et eeleritatem hostium nihil jam Caesaris imperium ex-
spectabant, sed per se, quae videbantur, administrabant.

Caesar hurryes about, encouraging his troops.

21. Caesar, necessariis rebus imperatis, ad cohortandos
milités, quam in partem fors obtulit, decucurrir et ad
legionem decimam devénit. Milités nón longiore oratióne
cohortatus, quam uti suae pristinae virtutis memoriam re-
tinérent neu perturbàrentur animó hostiumque impetum

1 signum: i.e. for the engagement. 2 impediebat: for the singular verb with
compound subject, see the note on habebat, p. 229, line 5. 
3 duae res: namely,
1) scientia atque usus militum, (2) quod... vetuerat. 4 quod... poterant:
explanatory of scientia atque usus. 5 exercitati: agreeing with the subject
of poterant. 6 quid oporteret: indirect question, the object of praescribere.
7 ipsi sibi: the reflexive pronouns are often thus emphasized by the addi-
tion of ipse, which in such cases, instead of standing in apposition with
the reflexive, more commonly agrees with the subject. In this use, ipse is
often untranslatable in English; thus here it serves merely as a contrast with
ab aliis. 8 legatos: the regular commanders of the legions. 9 nisi munitis
castris: until after the camp should be fortified; literally, unless the camp
having been fortified; Ablative Absolute. 10 nihil jam: no longer; but
nihil is more emphatic than non. 11 videbantur: seemed best. 12 necessariis
rebus: i.e. only the absolutely indispensable things. 13 quam in partem fors
obtulit: in the direction which chance suggested; for in eam partem in quam,
etc. 14 non longiore oratione quam uti, etc. in no more words than necessary
to urge them to retain, etc.; the clause uti retinerent depends upon the notion
of urging or exhorting suggested by oratione. 15 neu: neve (neu), and not
neque, is regularly used to introduce an added negative Substantive Clause
Developed from the Volitive. 16 animo: Ablative of Specification.
fortiter sustinerent,\(^1\) quod \(^2\) nōn longius hostēs aberant; quam\(^3\) quō tēlum adīgit posset, proelī committendī signum dedit. Atque in\(^4\) alteram partem eohortandī causā prefectus pugnantibus\(^5\) occurrīt. Temporis tanta fuit ex-siguītās hostiumque tam parātus ad dīmicandum animus, ut nōn modo ad insignia\(^6\) accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeas\(^7\) indueandas scūtīisque\(^8\) tegimenta detrāhenda tempus dēfuerit.\(^9\) Quam\(^10\) quisque ab opere in partem cāsū devenīt quaeque\(^11\) prima signa cōnspexit, ad haec\(^12\) cōn-
\(10\) stitit, nē in quae rens suis\(^13\) pugnandi tempus dīmitteret.

**Fighting under difficulties.**

22. Instruēctō exercitū, magis ut\(^14\) locī nātūra dējectus-
que collis et necessitās temporis, quam ut rēi mīlitāris ratiō atque ērdō postulābat, cum diversae\(^15\) legiones aliae\(^16\) alīā in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque\(^17\) dēnsissimīs, 15 ut\(^18\) ante dēmōnstrāvimus, interjectīs\(^19\) prōspectus impedī-
reōt, neque certā subsidia collocāre neque, quid in quāque

\(^1\) sustinerent: the introductory conjunction is utī, p. 231, l.15.  \(^2\) quod ... aberant: to be joined in thought with signum dedit.  \(^3\) quam ... posset: than the cast of a spear; literally, than (a point) to which a spear could be hurled; quo posset is a Clause of Characteristic; 405.  \(^4\) in alteram partem: namely, to the right wing.  \(^5\) pugnantibus: i.e. already fighting; pugnantibus agrees with ēis understood, the indirect object of occurrīt; 306, 3.  \(^6\) ad insignia accommodanda: for adjusting the decorations (to the helmets); by insignia we are probably to understand the crests of the helmets.  \(^7\) ad galeas indueandas: on the march the helmets were not worn on the head, but were suspended about the necks of the soldiers. See the illustration, p. 72.  \(^8\) scūtis tegimenta detrāhenda: except in battle, the shields were covered by cases to protect them from injury and the effects of the weather; scūtis is Ablative of Separation.  \(^9\) dēfuerit: the perfect subjunctive is here used as a historical tense.  \(^10\) quam quisque ab opere, etc.: to whatsoever place each one happened to come from the fortification.  \(^11\) quaeque = et quae. The antecedent of quae is haec.  \(^12\) ad haec: i.e. ad haec signa, by these. Strict balance of the sentence would have required, in haec parte et ad haec.  \(^13\) suis: understand signīs.  \(^14\) ut: as.  \(^15\) diversae: being separated.  \(^16\) aliae alia in parte: some in one place, others in another; 380.  \(^17\) saepibus: Ablative of Means.  \(^18\) ut ante demonstrāvimus: namely, p. 228, line 2 ff.  \(^19\) interjectis: which were scattered here and there.
parte opus esset, prōvidērī, neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum iūniquitāte fortūnae quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

Two legions on the left rout the Atrebates. Two in the centre rout the Viromandui. The remaining two are attacked by the Nervii.

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae militēs, ut in sinistrā parte acie constiterant, pīlis émissis, cursu ac lassitudine exanimatos vulneribusque confectos Atrebātēs (nam hīs ea pars obvēnerat) celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulērunt et trānsīre cōnantēs īnsecūti gladiis magnam partem eōrum impeditam interfēcērunt. Ipsī trānsīre flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt et in locum inīquum progressī rūrsus resistentēs hostēs, redintegrātō proelīō, in fugam conjēcērunt. Item āliā in parte diversae duae legiōnes, undecima et octāva, prōfīgātīs Viromanduis, quibuscum erant congressī, ex locō superiōre, in īpsīs flūminis ripīs proelīābantur. At tōtīs fēre castrīs ā fronte et ā sinis trā parte nūdātis cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima

subsidia: i.e. reserves in fixed places; the principal clause of the sentence begins here; subsidia is the subject of poterant.

1 provideri: dependent upon poterat (impersonal) understood, to be supplied from poterant. 2 fortūnae quoque ēventūs variī: various vicissitudes of fortune also. 3 ut ... constiterant: in accordance with their position, etc.; literally, just as they were posted (had taken their stand). 4 acie: a rare form of the genitive. 5 cursu ac lassitudine: of two coordinated ideas the second is often merely explanatory of the first, as here. 6 his: 306, 3. 7 ea pars: i.e. that division of the enemy, namely, the Atrebates. 8 ex locō superiōre: i.e. the Romans occupied the higher ground. 9 cōnantēs: agreeing with the omitted object of insecuti. 10 impeditam: i.e. by the confusion of their retreat and the passage of the stream. 11 īpsī: namely, the Romans. 12 redintegrātō proelīō: the Ablative Absolute is explanatory of resistentes,—renewing the fight and again resisting. 13 alīa in parte: namely, in the centre, directly in front of the camp. 14 diversae: i.e. some distance apart, not side by side, as ordinarily. 15 in īpsīs ripīs: on the very bank. 16 tōtīs fēre castrīs: fere very commonly stands after the word it modifies, thus separating the adjective from its noun. 17 a fronte, a sinistra parte: in front, on the left side. 18 nūdātis: the very success of the four legions brought the two remaining ones into the gravest danger. 19 cum consti-
et non magnō 1 ab ea intervallō septima ĉonstitisset, omnēs Nervīi confertissimō agmine, duce 2 Boduognató, qui summam 3 imperī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendĕrant; quōrum pars ab aperto 4 latere legiōnēs circumvenire, pars summum 5 castrōrum locum petere coepit.

The situation of the Romans becomes desperate.

24. Eōdem tempore equītēs nostri levisque 6 armātūrēae peditēs, quī cum 7 eis 8 uīnā fuerant, quōs 9 prīmo 10 hostium impetū pulsōs dīxeram, cum 11 sē in castra recipērent, adversīs 12 hostibus occurrēbant ac rūrsum aliām in partem fugam 10 petēbant, et cālōnēs, quī ā decumānā 13 portā ac summō 14 jugō collis nostros 15 victōrēs flūmen 16 trānsisse conspexē-

1 magnō intervallo: Ablative of Degree of Difference, depending upon the comparative notion implied in ab ea. 2 duce Boduognató: Ablative Absolute. 3 summam imperi: i.e. the chief command. 4 ab aperto latere: on the exposed flank, namely, the right. The expression originally applied to the individual soldier, who carried his shield in the left hand, thus leaving his right side exposed. 5 summum castrōrum locum: the height where the camp was, literally, the highest place of the camp; castrōrum is what is called an Appositional Genitive. 6 levis armātūrēae peditēs: such as bowmen, slingers, etc.; Genitive of Quality; 323. 7 cum una: along with. 8 eis: the equītēs. 9 quōs: its antecedent is equītēs and peditēs. 10 primo impetu pulsōs (esse): namely, at the river, when the Gauls emerged from the woods and rushed forth to the attack. 11 cum . . . recipērent: in order to return to camp, they had to recross the stream and ascend the hill. 12 adversīs: face to face; in predicate agreement with hostibus; for the dative, see 306, 3. 13 ā decumānā portā: the portā decumāna, or decuman gate, was located at the rear of the Roman camp. 14 ac summō jugō: these words do not designate a different place from decumānā portā, but are explanatory of it. The camp was on the upper slope of the hill, so that the decuman gate, being at the rear of the camp, was at the very crest of the elevation. 15 nostros victōres: our victorious troops. 16 flūmen transisse: in pursuit of the routed Atrebates, as described in chapter 23.
rant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum respexissent et hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vidissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum, qui cum impedimentis veniēbant, clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur, aliique aliam in partem perterrītī ferēbantur.

Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō est singulāris, qui auxilī causā ē civitāte ad Caesarem missī vēnerant, cum multūdīne hostium castra nostra complērī, legiōnēs premī et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidīās dīversōs dissipatōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vidissent, desperātīs nostrīs rēbus, domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedimentīisque eōrum hostēs potītos civitātī renūntiāvērunt.

Caesar’s heroic example saves the day.

25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dexterrum cornū pōfectus, ubi suōs urgērī, signīsque in unum locum collātīs, duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs milītēs sibi ipsōs ad pugnam esse impedimentō vidīt, quārtae cohortīs.

praedandī causa: the camp followers, seeing part of the enemy in flight, naturally assumed that the victory was complete, and hence set forth in quest of plunder. praecipitēs: precipitately; agreeing with calones. eōrum qui, etc.: these were the drivers of the baggage-train guarded by the 13th and 14th legions, which were bringing up the rear. oriēbātur: singular verb with compound subject expressing a single idea. aliique aliam in partem: some in one direction, others in another; 380. Treveri: here an adjective. quōrum: the relative refers not alone to the cavalry of the Treveri, but to the whole tribe. virtūtis opinio: reputation for valor. a civitāte: the state is conceived of as a person, hence the preposition. cum: the conjunction, introducing vidissent. compleri, premi, etc.: dependent on vidissent. legiōnes: namely, the 7th and the 12th. diversōs: the participle (from dīverto), not the adjective. desperātis nostrīs rēbus: despairing of our fortunes. pulsōs superātōsque: understand esse. castrīs impedimentīisque: governed by potītos (esse); 344, 1. ab: from, in the local, not the temporal sense. ubi: introducing vidīt. sibi ipsōs ad pugnam, etc.: hindered each other in fighting. quārtae cohortīs: the fourth cohort occupied the extreme left of the front line, a particularly exposed position; hence the casualties detailed by Caesar.
Reinforcements arrive.

26. Caesar, cum septimam legiōnem, quae jūxta 15 con-
stiterat, item urgerī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs mīlitum

1 signo amissō: the loss of the standard was naturally felt as a disgrace.
2 prīmīpiō confectō: the prīmīpiō was properly the commander of the first
maniple of the first cohort of a legion, but military custom gave him control,
not only over his own maniple and cohort, but to a certain extent over the
entire legion. 3 multīs gravibusque = many severe. 4 tardiores: rather
listless. 5 ab novissimis: at the rear. 6 neque subeuntes intermittere: and
did not stop advancing; neque is correlative with et in the next line. In the
foregoing description notice how admirably the rapidly sketched details accord
with the scene of confusion which Caesar is aiming to depict. 7 rem esse in
angusto: that matters had reached a critical pass; literally, were in a nar-
row place; angusto is the adjective used substantively. 8 scuto mīlitī dē-
tractō: snatching a shield from a soldier; mīlitī is Dative of Separation.
9 eo: the adverb. 10 reliquis mīlitibus: object of cohōratus. 11 signa in-
ferre: i.e. to advance. 12 manipulos laxare: to open up the companies.
13 pro se quisque: each to the best of his ability. 14 etiam in extremis suis
rebus: even in their desperate situation. 15 jūxta: i.e. near the 12th legion,
of which Caesar has just been speaking.
The Romans defeat and almost annihilate the Nervii. Caesar spares the survivors.

27. Hórum adventū tanta rerum commutâtio est facta, ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus confection prōcubuissent, scutis innixī proelium redintegrārent, câlōnēs perterri-

---

1 legiones: the 7th and the 12th. 2 conversa signa ... inferrent: face about and advance upon the enemy; literally, bear their changed standards; Substantive Clause Developed from the Volitive; dependent upon monuit (‘let them bear, etc.’). The nature of the evolution here mentioned is thoroughly obscure. As shown by the following aversi, the Roman legions evidently secured their own rear from attack. Very likely they stood back to back. 3 aversi: in the rear; literally, turned away; agreeing with the subject of circumvenirentur. 4 legionum duarum: the 13th and 14th. 5 cursu incitato: at full speed. 6 castris hostium: this was across the river, whither Labienus had advanced in pursuit of the Atrebates. 7 ex loco superioro: the high ground of the opposite bank gave Labienus a full view of the struggle going on around the camp of the Romans. 8 qui cum: qui refers to the soldiers of the 10th legion; cum introduces cognovissent. 9 esset. versaretur: indirect questions; 431. Note that versaretur agrees in number with its nearest subject. 10 nihil ... fecerunt: made all possible speed; literally, left nothing (of) undone in point of speed; reliquī is a predicate genitive. 11 prōcubuissent: subjunctive by attraction to the following redintegrārent. 12 scutis: ablative with innixī, the regular construction with innitor. 13 calones: the subject of occurrerunt.
tós hostēs cōspicātī etiam inermēs armātīs occurrērent, equitēs vérō, ut turpītūdinem fugae virtūte delērent, omnibus in locīs pugnae se legiōnāriīs militibus praeferrēnt.

At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtīs tantam virtūtēm praestitērunt, ut, cum prīmi eōrum cecidissent, proximi jacentibus insisterent atque ex eōrum corpore corporibus pugnārēnt; his dējectīs et concārvātīs cadāveribus, qui superessent, ut ex tumulō tēla in nostrōs conicerent et pīla intercepta remitterent; ut nōn nēquīquam tantae virtūtīs homīnēs jūdicārī dēbēret ausōs esse trānsīre lātissīmum filēnum, ascendere altissimās rīpās, subīre īnīquissīmum locum, quae ex difficillīmīs animī magnitūdō redēgerat.

28. Hoc proelīo factō et prope ad internicēnem gentē ac nōmine Nerviōrūm redāctō, majōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestūria ac palūdes coniectōs dīxerāmus, hāc pugnā nūntiātā, cum victoribus nihil impeditum, victīs nihil tutum arbitrārentur, omnium, qui

1 inermēs: limiting calones. 2 se . . . praeferrēnt: strowe to show (literally, showed) themselves superior to the regular soldiers. The cavalry was furnished mainly by the allies; less was ordinarily expected of it than of the legionaries. 3 militibus: Dative of Indirect Object with a compound of prae; 306, 3. 4 prīmi: the foremost. 5 jacentibus insisterent: took their stand upon the fallen. 6 his, etc.: in English we need a conjunction (and) to join this clause to the preceding; Asyndeton. 7 qui superessent: the survivors. The antecedent of qui is the subject of conicerent; superessent is attracted into the subjunctive. 8 ut ex tumulo: from a mound, as it were; namely, a mound of dead bodies. 9 conicerent: in the same construction as insisterent and pugnarent; i.e. exhibited such valor that the survivors, etc. 10 pīla intercepta remitterent: when the pilum had once been hurled, its slender point usually bent, so that it could not be effectively returned by the enemy. The desperation of the Nervii is here emphasized by their frantic attempts to utilize these pilum. 11 ut non nequīquam, etc.: so that it ought not to be thought that men of so great bravery dared without reason (i.e. without prospect of success) to cross. The emphasis of the clause rests upon non nequīquam; ausōs esse is the subject of dēberet. 12 quae: things which; the antecedent of quae is found in the preceding infinitives. 13 faciūa . . . redēgerat: had rendered easy from being most difficult; faciūa is predicate accusative. 14 dīxerāmus: i.e. prior to the description of the battle. 15 cum: since. 16 impeditum, tutum: predicate adjectives with nihil.
supererant, consensū légātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt sēque eī dediderunt, et in commemorandā civitātās calamitātēs ex sexcentīs ad trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum mīlibus LX vix ad quīngentōs quī arma ferre possent, sēsē redāctōs esse dīxērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs usus misericordiā vidērētur, diligentissimē cōnservāvit suīisque fīni̇bus atque oppidīs utī jussīt et fīnitimīs imperāvit, ut ab injūriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērēnt.

**CHAPTERS 29–33. — CONFLICT WITH THE ADUATUCI.**

*The Aduatuci take refuge in a stronghold.*

29. Aduatucī, dé quibus supra scīpīmus, cum omni̇bus cōpi̇s auxiliō Nervīs venīrent, hāc pugnā nūniātā, ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūntīs oppidīs castellīisque désertīs, suā omnia in ānum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūni̇tum contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partībus altissimās rūpēs déjectūsque habēret, ùnā ex parte lēniter aeglīvis aditus in lātitūdinem nōn amplius ducentō rum pedum relinquēbātur; quem locum duplicē altissimō mūrō mūnierant; tum magnī pondēris saxa et praeacūtās trabēs in mūrō collocābant.

Ipsti erant ex Cimbrīs Teutonīisque prōgnātī, quī, cum iter in prōvinciam nostrām atque Italiam facerent, eīs impedimentīs, quae sēcūm agēre ac portāre nōn poterant,

---

1 ex sexcentīs ad tres, etc.: the Nervīi shrewdly exaggerate their losses, in order to move Caesar's pity.  2 usus: i.e. usus esse.  3 viderētur: here not seem, but be seen.  4 ut prohibērēnt: Substantive Clause Developed from the Volutīve; object of imperāvit.  5 cum: the conjunction.  6 auxi̇lio: Dative of Purpose; 313.  7 quod cum: adversative, — while this . . . (yet).  8 ducentōrum pedum: Genitive of Quality limiting aditus; amplius, as usual, does not affect the construction of the sentence.  9 tum: at that time.  10 in muro: on the wall.  11 collocabant: i.e. they were engaged in placing them.  12 ex Cimbrīs Teutonīs: see note on p. 212, line 11.  13 iter facerent: were making a raid.  14 agēre, portāre: agēre, literally drive, suggests that the impedimenta consisted partly of cattle and horses.
Their contempt for the Roman siege works.

30. Ac primum adventu exercitus nostri exercitiones faciebant parvulissque proelii cum nostris contendebant; postra vallum pedum xii, in circitu xv miliunm crbrisque castellis circummuniti oppid o sese continebant. Ubi, vinea, aggere extructo, turrim procul constituit videtur, primum irridere ex muro atque increpitare vocibus, quod tanta machinatio a tant o spatii institueretur: Quibusnam manibus aut quibus viribus praesertim homines tantulae staturae (nam pleurumque omnibus Gallis prae magnitudine corporum suorum brevitatis nostra contemptui est) tant  one ris turrim in muro sese collocare posse confiderent?

1 custodiam ac praesidium: as a guard (of the property) and a garrison (of the place); predicate accusatives. 2 ex suis: from their number; literally, from their own (people). The phrase limits milia. 3 una: i.e. along with the impedimenta. 4 hi: i.e. those left as a guard. 5 eorum: the Cimbri and Teutoni, who were defeated by Marius in 102 and 101 B.C. 6 alias . . . defenderent: at one time waged offensive war, at another time defensive (literally, warded off war brought against them). 7 eorum, omnium: i.e. all their enemies. 8 locum: region. 9 adventu: Ablative of Time. 10 pedum XII: i.e. twelve feet in height. 11 XV miliunm: pedum, not passuum, is to be understood. 12 oppido: in the town; but the ablative is one of Means. 13 vinea, aggere, turrim: see p. 223. 14 irridere, increpitare: Historical Infinitives. The Historical Infinitive is freely used in Latin as the equivalent of a past tense of the indicative. 15 quod institueretur: the reason in the minds of the Aduatuci; hence the subjunctive; 407. 16 a tanto spatio: so far away; a is an adverb; tanto spatio is Ablative of Degree of Difference. 17 quibusnam: with what . . . pray? 18 omnibus Gallis: in the eyes of all the Gauls. The case is dative. 19 contemptui: Dative of Purpose. 20 confiderent: questions in indirect discourse often stand in the subjunctive.
ATTACK ON A BESIEGED CITY.
They surrender, but secretly retain weapons.

31. Ubi vērō movērī⁠¹ et appropinquare moenibus vidērunt, novā atque inūsītātā speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, qui ad hunc modum locuti:⁠² Nōn ³ sē exīstimāre, Rōmānōs sine ope dēōrum bellum gerere, qui⁴ tantae altūtūdinis māchīnātiōnēs tantā celeritātē prōmōvēre possent; sē suaque omnīa eōrum potestātī permittere dīxērunt. Unum⁵ petere ac dēprecāri: sī forte prō⁶ suā clēmentiā ac mānūsētūdīnė, quam⁷ ipsī ab aliīs audīrent, statuisset,⁸ Aduatucōs esse cōnservāndōs, nē⁹ sē armīs¹⁰ dēspoliāret. Sībi¹¹ omnēs fērē fīnitimōs esse inīmīcōs ac suae vīrūtū invidēre; a quibus sē dēfendere, trāditīs¹² armīs, nōn possent. Sībi¹³ praēstāre, sī in eum¹⁴ cāsum dēdūcentur, quamvīs¹⁵ fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī,¹⁶ quam ab īs per crūciātum interficī inter quōs dominārī¹⁷ cōnsuēssent.¹⁸

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: Sē magis cōnsuētūdīnē suā quam merītō eōrum civītātēm cōnservātūrūm, sī, priusquam¹⁹ mūrūm ariēs attigisset, sē dēdīssent; sed dēdītiōnis nūllam esse condīciōnem nisi armīs trāditīs. Sē id, 20 quod in Nervīs²⁰ féciisset, factūrūm fīnitimīsqué imperātū-

---

¹ moveri: as subject understand turrīm. ² locuti: for locuti sunt. ³ non: placed first for emphasis; it logically belongs with sine. ⁴ qui possent: since they could. ⁵ unum: one thing; explained by the clause ne despoliaret. ⁶ pro: in accordance with. ⁷ quam audīrent: i.e. which they were continuually hearing of. ⁸ statuisset, etc.: if he should decide that the Aduatuci were to be spared. ⁹ ne despoliaret: let him not deprive them, etc.; imperative clause in indirect discourse. ¹⁰ armīs: Ablative of Separation. ¹¹ sībi: with inīmicos. ¹² virtūti: for the dative, see 306, 2. ¹³ trāditis armīs: if they should surrender their arms; 359. ¹⁴ sībi praēstāre: it was better for them. ¹⁵ in eum cāsum: to that pass, namely, of being thus exposed to the vengeance of their neighbors. ¹⁶ quamvīs fortūnam: any visitation whatever; quamvis is the indefinite pronoun. ¹⁷ patī, interīci: subjects of the impersonal praēstāre. ¹⁸ cōnsuēssent: for consuevissent. ¹⁹ priusquam... attigisset: i.e. without waiting for a continuance of the siege operations; attigisset represents a future perfect indicative of direct statement. After the actual storming of a city began, a voluntary surrender was no longer possible. For the ariēs, see p. 13. ²⁰ in Nervīs: in the case of the Nervī.
CONFLICT WITH THE ADUATUCI.

rum, ne\textsuperscript{1} quam dēditicis populī Rōmānī injūriam infer-
rent.

Rē nūntiātā ad suōs, illī sē,\textsuperscript{2} quae imperārentur, facere
dixerunt. Armōrum magnā\textsuperscript{3} multitūdine dē mūrō in fos-
sam, quae erat ante oppidum, jactā, sic ut prope summam\textsuperscript{4} mūrī aggerisque altitūdinem acervī armōrum adaequārent,
et tamen circiter parte tertīā, ut postea perspectum est,
cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, portīs patefactīs, eō diē
pāce\textsuperscript{5} sunt āsi.

\textit{Caesar thwarts their attempted treachery, and sells them into}
slavery.

\textbf{33.} Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudiā militēsque ex 10
oppidō exīre jussit, nē quam\textsuperscript{6} noctū oppidānī a militibus
injūriam acciperent. Illī, ante initō, ut intellēctum est,
cōnsiliō, quod dēditione factā nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs
aut dēnique\textsuperscript{7} indīlgentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, partim
cum eīs, quae retinuerant et cēlāverant, armīs, partim scūtīs\textsuperscript{8}
ex corticē factīs aut viminibus\textsuperscript{9} intextīs, quae subitō, ut tem-
poris exiguitās postulābat, pellibus īndūxerant, tertīā vigiliā,
quā\textsuperscript{10} minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnitionēs ascēnsum vidē-
bātur, omnibus cōpiās repente ex oppidō ēruptionem fecerunt.

Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperāverat, īgnibus significā-
tōne factā, ex proximīs castellīs eō\textsuperscript{10} concursūm est pug-
natūmque ab hostibus īta acriter est, ut\textsuperscript{11} ā virīs fortībus

\textsuperscript{1} ne quam ... inferrent: not to inflict any damage; a Substantive Clause
Developed from the Voltive. In these, as in Purpose Clauses, ne quis is reg-
ularly used instead of ut nullus.  \textsuperscript{2} se facere dixerunt: said that they did,
or would do. We should have expected a future tense, but the present lends
greater vividness to the narrative by suggesting immediate compliance.
\textsuperscript{3} magna multitūdine: with jactā.  \textsuperscript{4} summam mūri aggerisque altitū-
dinem: the full height of the wall and agger; i.e. the arms filled the space
between the fortifications and the head of the agger, which had already
neared the walls.  \textsuperscript{5} pace sunt āsi: observed peace.  \textsuperscript{6} quam: the indefinite
pronoun, any.  \textsuperscript{7} dēnique: at least.  \textsuperscript{8} viminibus intextīs: woven willow-
work: like corticē, governed by ex.  \textsuperscript{9} qua: where.  \textsuperscript{10} eo concursum est:
they ran thither; 287.  \textsuperscript{11} ut a virīs fortībus pugnāri debuit: as brave men
were bound to fight; debuit and pugnāri are impersonal.
in extrémā spē salūtis inquō locō contrā eós, quī ex vallō
turribusque tēla jacerent, pugnārī debuit, cum in ānā
virtūte omnis spēs salūtis cōnsisteret. Oceīsīs ad homi-
num mīlibus quattuor, reliquī in oppidum rejectī sunt.

5 Postrīdī ejus dieī refrāctīs portīs, cum jam défenderet
nēmō, atque intrōmissīs mīlibus nostrīs, sectiōnem ejus
oppidī universam Caesar vēndidit. Ab eīs, qui ēmerant,
capitum numerus ad eum relātus est mīlium quīnquā-
gintā trium.

Chapters 34, 35. — Concluding Events of the Year.

Publius Crassus reduces several tribes along the coast.

34. Eōdem tempore ā Públiō Crassō, quem cum legiōne
ūna miserat ad Venētos, Venēllōs, Osismōs, Coriosolītās,
Esuviōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae civi-
tātēs Óceanumque attingunt, certior factus est, omnēs eās
civitātēs in diiciōnem potestātemque populi Rōmānī esse

Caesar places the army in winter quarters. A thanksgiving commem-
orating his victories is decreed at Rome.

35. His rebus gestīs, omni Galliā pacatā, tanta hūjus
bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est, utī ab eīs nātiōnibus,
quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent, lēgātī ad Caesaarem mit-
terentur, qui sē obsīdes datūrās imperātā factūrās
pollicērentur. Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesaer, quod in Italian

1 in una virtute: in valor alone. 2 ad: about. 3 jam: longer. 4 capitum:
persons. 5 milium quinquaginta trium: as being fifty-three thousand; pred-
icate genitive. 6 Coriosolītās: Greek accusative plural. 7 quae: the relative
is attracted to the gender of the predicate noun. 8 civitātēs: nations, tribes,
as often in Caesar. 9 omni Galliā pacatā: i.e. all those portions which offered
organized resistance to the Romans. 10 incolerent: subjunctive by attraction
to mitterentur. 11 qui pollicērentur: a Relative Clause of Purpose. 12 se
daturas, factūras (esse): the speakers identify themselves with their nati-
ones; hence the feminine gender. Note the Asyndeton in daturas, factūras.
13 in Italian: i.e. cisalpine Gaul, one of Caesar’s provinces.
Illyricumque properabat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē revertī jussit.

Ipse, in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs, quaeque civitātēs propinquae hīs locīs erant, ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnibus in hīberna dēductīs, in Italiam profectus est. Ob cāisque rēs ex litterīs Ĉaesaris in diēs quīndecim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūlī.

1 Carnutes, Andes, Turonos: these names survive in the town names Chartres, Anjou, and Tours. 2 quaeque civitates = et in eas civitates quae. 3 ex litteris: in accordance with despatches. 4 supplicatio: a public thanksgiving. Prior to this no supplicatio had ever been decreed for a longer period than twelve days. 5 quod: its antecedent is the previous statement. 6 nulli: for nemini, i.e. the adjective for the substantive. Note the emphasis produced by placing this word at the end of the sentence.
GENERAL LATIN–ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

Note.—Of the twelve hundred words in this Vocabulary, only about two-thirds are employed in the Lessons of the body of the book (see Preface). The remainder occur in the Second Book of Caesar. Regular verbs of the first conjugation are indicated by the numeral 1 following the present indicative.

A

a, ab, prep. w. abl., from; by.
abdō, ere, didī, dītus, hide.
abeō, ēre, ēī, ētūrus, go away; pass.
absūm, esse, āfūi, āfutūrus, be absent, be distant (§ 252).
ac (atque), and, and also; than; ac is not used before vowels.
accēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, draw near, approach; be added to.
accidō, ere, īdi, happen.
accipio, ēre, ēpī, ēptus, receive.
acclivis, ē, sloping.
acclivītās, ātis, f., ascent, slope, rise.
accommodō, 1, adjust.
accurrō, ere, cucurrī, currum, run to, run up; hasten.
acēsūs, 1, accuse.
ācer, ācris, ācre, sharp, vigorous, keen, severe.
acervus, ī, m., heap, pile.
acīs, ēī, f., line of battle.
ācriter, sharply, fiercely.
ad, prep. w. acc., to, towards, against; for (denoting purpose); near; at; according to. As adv., about.
adaequō, 1, equal.
adduōcō, ere, dūxi, ductus, lead, bring; lead on, impel.
adeō, īre, īī, ītūrus, go to, visit, approach.
adigō, ere, ēgī, ēctus, hurl, drive.
aditus, īs, m., approach, access.
adjuvō, āre, īvī, ītus, help.
administrō, 1, perform, execute, carry out.
admodum, quite, very much.
admonēō, ēre, ī, ītus, remind, warn.
adolēscō, ere, īēvī, grow up.
adorient, īrī, ortus sum, attack.
adsum, adesse, ādītus, adītūrus, be present, be at hand (§ 252).
Aduatūci, ērum, m. pl., the Aduatūci, a Belgian tribe.
adulēscēns, centis, m., young man.
adveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, arrive.
adventus, īs, m., arrival.
adversārius, īī, m., adversary.
adversum, adversus, prep. w. acc., against.
adversus, a, um, adverse; in front, facing.
aedificium, ī (īī), n., building.
aegrē, with difficulty.
aequāliter, evenly, uniformly.
aequus, qua, quum, level, just.
aestās, tātis, f., summer.
aestuārium, ī, n., estuary, marsh.
aestās, tātis, f., age, time of life.
affeô, ferre, attulê, allàtus, bring (§ 264).
affinitas, tätis, f., relationship by marriage.
ager, agrî, m., field, land.
agger, eris, m., embankment, rampart; material for an agger.
aggreddior, î, gressus sum, attack.
agmen, minis, n., army (on the march), column.
ago, ere, egi, actus, drive, lead, bring up, advance, do; parley.
agricola, ae, m., farmer.
alacer, cris, cre, eager.
aliás, at another time. aliás...
aliás, at one time . . . at another.
aliènus, a, um, of others, of another; unfavorable.
aliquí, aliqua, aliquid, adj., some (§ 146).
aliquis, aliquid, some one, something (§ 146).
alter, otherwise.
ælius, a, ud, other, another, else (§ 83).
Allobroges, um, the Allobroges, a Gallic tribe.
alter, era, erum, the other; second (§ 83).
altitudô, inis, f., height; depth.
altus, a, um, high, deep; as noun, altum, î, n., the deep, the deep sea.
Ambiani, òrum, m. pl., the Ambiani, a Belgian tribe.
amíce, adv., in a friendly manner.
amicitia, ae, f., friendship.
amícus, î, m., friend.
amíttô, ere, misî, missus, lose.
amô, l, love.
ampliificô, l, enlarge, extend, increase.
amplius, adv., more.
amplius, a, um, ample, glorious.

ariēs
an, interrog. particle, or; whether.
ancora, ae, f., anchor.
Andecumborius, î, m., Andecumborius, a Gaul.
Andês, ium, m. pl., the Andes, a Gallic tribe.
angustiae, ārum, f. pl., a narrow pass.
angustus, a, um, narrow.
amíadvertis, ere, vertî, versus, notice.
aminal, mális, n., animal.
amímus, î, m., mind, soul; courage, heart; spirit, disposition, feelings, temper.
annus, î, m., year.
ante, prep. w. ace, before, in front of; adv., before, ago, previously. antea, previously, before.
antecêdô, ere, cessâ, cessûrus, precede.
antequam, conj., before.
antiquitûs, adv., in former times, long ago, anciently.
antiquus, a, um, ancient.
apertûs, a, um, open, clear.
appellô, î, name, call.
apropriquío, î, approach.
Aprilis, e, adj., of April.
apud, prep. w. acc., among, at, near, with, at the home of.
aqua, ae, f., water.
Aquitânii, òrum, m. pl., Aquitanians, a Gallic tribe.
Aquitania, ae, f., Aquitania, a district of Gaul.
Arar, is, m., the Arar, a river; the modern Saône.
arbitror, trârî, trâtûs sum, reckon, estimate, consider.
arbor, oris, f., tree.
arcessô, ere, ivî, itûs, summon.
ardûs, a, um, steep.
ariēs, etis, m., ram; battering-ram.
GENERAL LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

Ariovistus
Ariovistus, i, m., Ariovistus, a king of the Germans.
arma, örum, n. pl., arms.
armätula, ae, f., equipment.
armätus, a, um, armed.
armö, 1, arm.
arrogantia, ae, f., arrogance.
ax, arcis, f., citadel.
ascendō, ere, endi, ēnsum, ascendē.
ascēnsus, ūs, m., ascent.
at, but.
Athēnae, ārum, f. pl., Athens.
atque, and, and also; see ae.
Atrebātēs, um, m. pl., the Atrebates, a Belgian tribe.
Atticus, i, m., Atticus, a friend of Cicero.
attingō, ere, attigi, attāctus, touch, border on.
atuli, perf. of afferō.
auetoritās, tātis, f., authority, influence.
audācter, courageously, bravely, boldly.
audāx, gen. audācis, courageous.
audeō, ēre, ausus sum; semi-dep., dare.
audiō, ēre, īvī, ītus, hear, hear of.
aufugīō, ere, fugiō, fugāturās, flee.
augeō, ēre, auxi, auctus, increase (tr.).
Aulerci, ārum, m. pl., the Aulerci, a Gallic tribe.
Aulus, i, m., Aulus, a man's name.
Aununculeīus, i, m., Auncunculeius, a man's name.
aut, or; aut... aut, either... or.
antem, however; but.
auxilium, i (ii), n., aid, help; in pl. auxilia, ārum, n., auxiliary troops, auxiliaries.
Avāricum, i, n., Avāricum, a Gallic town.

cadāver
āvertō, ere, ti, versus, avert. turn away, turn aside.
Axōna, ae, m., a river; the modern Aisne.
Bacēnis, is, f., Bacenis, a forest.
Baculus, i, m., Baculus, a Roman centurion.
Baleārēs, um, m. pl., inhabitants of the Balearic Isles; as adj., Balcaric.
barba, ae, f., beard.
barbarus, i, m., a barbarian; adj., us, a, um, barbarian.
beātus, a, um, happy.
Belgae, ārum, m. pl., Belgians, a Gallic tribe.
bellō, 1, make war, carry on war.
Bellovaci, ārum, m. pl., the Bellovaci, a Belgian tribe.
bellum, ī, n., war.
bene, adv., well (§ 109).
beneficium, i (ii), n., kindness.
Bibrax, actis, f., Bibrax, a town of the Remi.
Bibulus, i, m., Bibulus, a man's name.
biduum, i, n., two days.
biennium, i, n., two years.
Boduognitus, i, m., Boduognatus, a chieftain of the Nervii.
Bōji, ārum, m. pl., the Bōji, an ancient tribe.
bonus, a, um, good; in pl., bona, örum, n., property.
Brātuspanium, i, n., Bratuspantium, a Gallic town.
brevis, e. short, brief; brevī, within a short time.
brevitās, ātis, f., shortness; low stature.
Britannia, ae, f., Britain.
C., abbreviation for Gāius, Gaius.
cadāver, is, n., corpse, dead body.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>English Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cadō</td>
<td>fall.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caerōsī, òrum</td>
<td>the Caerōsi, a Belgian tribe.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caesar, aris</td>
<td>Caesar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calamitās, tātis</td>
<td>calamity, disaster.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caletī, òrum</td>
<td>the Caletī, a Belgian tribe.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiō, capere</td>
<td>capture; adopt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>captūs, ī</td>
<td>captive, prisoner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carnutēs, um</td>
<td>the Carnutēs, a Gallic tribe.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carrus, ī</td>
<td>cart, wagon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cassiānus, ā, um</td>
<td>Cassian; pertaining to Cassius.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>castellum, ī, n.</td>
<td>fort, redoubt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>castra, òrum, n.</td>
<td>a camp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>casus, ūs, m.</td>
<td>chance, accident; misfortune; plight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catēna, ae, f.</td>
<td>chain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catilīna, ā, m.</td>
<td>Catiline.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>causa, ae, f.</td>
<td>cause, ground, reason; condition; causā, abl., for the sake of; the dependent genitive precedes causā.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clam, secretely.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clamor, oris, m.</td>
<td>shout, shouting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>celārus, ā, um</td>
<td>clear, loud; distinguished.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>classis, classis, f.</td>
<td>fleet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>claudo, ere, clausus, shut</td>
<td>close; bring up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coacervo, ī</td>
<td>pile up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coepī, coeptissē</td>
<td>began, have begun § 281).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōgitō, ī</td>
<td>think.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cognōscō, ere, nōvī</td>
<td>nitus, learn; cognōvī, I know.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cohors, cohortis, f.</td>
<td>cohort (division of a legion).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
cohortātiō
cohortātiō, ōnis, f., encouragement, cheering.
cohortor, 1, exhort, cheer, encourage.
collātus, perf. pass. participle of cōnferō.
collēga, ae, m., colleague.
collis, is, m., hill.
collōco, 1, place, arrange, station.
colloquium, ūrum, n., conference.
colloquor, ī, locūtus sum, confer.
commātus, ūs, m., supplies.
commemorō, 1, recount.
committō, ere, misī, missus, bring together; with proelium or pugnam, to join battle.
commodē, conveniently, readily.
commoveō, īre, movī, motūs, move, stir up, alarm, excite; induce.
communiō, īre, ii, itus, strongly fortify.
commūnis, e, common.
commūtātiō, ōnis, f., change.
comparē, 1, get ready.
compellō, ere, pulī, pulsus, drive.
comperīō, īre, perī, pertus, find out.
compleō, īre, plēvī, plētus, fill up.
complūres, plūra, gen. ium, very many.
concēdō, īre, cessī, cessūrus, grant.
concēcīō, īre, cūdī, ciusus, cut to pieces.
conciliō, 1, reconcile, win over.
concilium, ī (ii), n., council.
concurrō, īre, i, currūs, run together.
concursus, ūs, m., a running together.
condiciō, ōnis, f., condition, terms.
Condruśi, ōrum, m.pl., the Condruśi, a Belgian tribe.
conducīō, īre, dūxī, ductus, lead together, bring together; hire.
conferō, ferre, tuli, collātus, bring together; sē cōnferre, betake one's self (§ 264).
cōnspectus, ūs, m., view, sight.
cōnspectūriō, īre, spectūs, spectātus, see.
cōns services, ūs, m., plan, design, purpose; council; advice.
cōnsimilis, e, like, exactly like.
cōnsistō, īre, stītī, stand, take a stand; stand one's ground; consist; depend on.
cōnspicīō, īre, specīs, spectūs, see.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>English Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>conspicor</td>
<td>catch sight of, observe.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decurrō</td>
<td>run down, rush, hasten.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crassus, ì, m.</td>
<td>Crassus, a man's name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erēber, bra, brum</td>
<td>frequent, thick, dense.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>creō, ere, didi, ditum</td>
<td>believe (§ 306, 2).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cretēs, um, m. pl.</td>
<td>Cretans; as adj., Cretan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cruciātus, ūs, m.</td>
<td>torture.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cupō, 1</td>
<td>blame.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cupidus, a, um</td>
<td>fond, eager.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cupio, ere, cupivi, cupitus</td>
<td>desire, be eager.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cur, adv.</td>
<td>why!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>curo, 1</td>
<td>care for, take care of.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cursus, US</td>
<td>running, course.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>custodia, ae, f.</td>
<td>a guard; custody.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dē, prep. w. abl.</td>
<td>concerning; of, from.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēbeō, dēbere, dēbui, dēbitus</td>
<td>owe; with a dependent infinitive, ought; pass., to be due.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēcēdō, ēre, cessī, cessūrus</td>
<td>withdraw.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decem, indecl., ten</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēcernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus</td>
<td>decree; decide (by combat), fight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēcērō, 1</td>
<td>fight, fight it out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decimus, a, um</td>
<td>tenth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decipiō, ēre, cēpī, ceptus, deceive.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>declivis, e</td>
<td>sloping.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decumānus, a, um</td>
<td>decuman, in decumāna porta, the decuman gate in a Roman camp; see Notes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decurrō, ēre, curri, or cucurri, currus</td>
<td>run down; rush, hasten.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
démiticius
démiticius, a, um, that has surrendered. As noun, démiticii, prisoners of war.
démitio, ónis, f., surrender.
dédo, dere, didi, déditus, give up, surrender.
dédúcō, ere, dúxi, ductus, lead away; remove; conduct; lead, bring.
défectio, ónis, f., revolt.
défendō, ere, fendere, fensus, defend; ward off.
défensio, ónis, f., defence.
défensor, óris, m., defender.
déferō, ferre, tuli, látus (§ 294), confer upon, bestow; report.
déficiō, ere, féeci, fectus, fail; revolt.
déciō, ere, déjeci, dejectus, dislodge.
déinde, then, afterwards.
déjectus, üs, m., descent, slope, declivity.
délatus, perf. pass. participle of déferō.
délectó, 1, delight.
déleō, ere, évi, étus, wipe out; destroy.
déléherō, 1, deliberate, consult.
déligō, 1, tie to, fasten to.
déligō, ere, légī, lēctus, choose.
démonstrō, 1, point out, show.
dénique, finally; in short, at least.
dénsus, a, um, dense, thick.
dépōnō, ere, posuí, positus, put aside, place, put, leave.
dépopulār, āri, ātus sum, lay waste.
déprecor, 1, entreat, beg.
désérō, ere, serui, sertus, abandon, desert.
désistō, ere, stiti, cease.
désperō, 1, despair, despair of.
despiciō, ere, spexi, spectus, despise.
despoliō, 1, strip, deprive.

diu
dēsum, dēesse, dēfui, dēfutūrus, be wanting, fail (§ 252).
dēterreō, ère, ui, itus, frighten off; deter, prevent.
dētrahō, ère, trāxi, trāctus, draw off; snatch.
dētrimentum, i, n., loss, damage, harm.
deus, i, m., god.
dēveniō, ère, vēnī, ventum, come, arrive.
dexer, tra, trum, right; as subst. (sc. manus), right hand.
diciō, ónis, f., sway.
dicō, ere, dixi, dictus, say; utter; appoint; call.
diēs, ēi, m. or f., day.
differō, ferre, distuli, dilātum, differ (§ 294).
difficilis, e, difficult.
difficultās, ātis, f., difficulty.
dignitās, tātis, f., dignity.
dignus, a, um, worthy.
diligenter, carefully, scrupulously.
diligentia, ae, f., diligence.
dimētor, īri, mēnsus sum, measure off.
dīmicō, 1, contend, fight.
dīmittō, ere, mīsī, missus, let go, lose; dismiss, disband.
dīripio, ere, ripuī, reptus, plunder.
dīrūō, ere, ruī, rutus, tear down, destroy.
discēdō, ere, cessā, cessūrus, depart, withdraw.
discressus, üs, m., departure.
disciplīna, ae, f., discipline.
dispensō, ere, posuí, positus, station here and there; distribute.
dissēnsio, ónis, f., disagreement.
dissipātus, a, um, scattered.
distineō, ère, ui, tentus, hold apart, keep apart.
diū, adv., a long time.
diūtius

diūtius, comp. of diū.
diversus, a, um, different; separated.
Diviciōnēs, um, m., Divico, a Helvetian chieftain.
dividō, ere, īsī, īsus, divide.
Divitiācus, ī, m., Divitiācus, a man's name.
dō, dāre, dedī, dātus, give, render;
put, set.
doceō, ēre, ū, doctus, teach, show.
dolor, ōris, m., grief.
domesticus, a, um, of one's home,
one's own.
domicilium, ī, n., home, abode.
dominor, 1, be master, rule.
Domitius, ī (ii), m., Domitius, a man's name.
domus, īsī, f., house, home.
dōneō, 1, present.
dōnum, ī, n., gift.
dubitō, 1, doubt, be in doubt; hesitate, waver.
ducentī, ae, a, two hundred.
duōcō, ere, duāxi, ductus, lead, draw.
dum, while; as long as; until.

ē, ex, prep. w. abl., from, out of, of;
ē is not used before vowels or h.
Eburōnēs, um, m. pl., the Eburones,
a Belgian tribe.
ēditus, a, um, elevated, lofty, high.
ēduōcō, ere, duāxi, ductus, lead forth.
efficiō, ere, fecī, fectus, make, render; do, bring about.
excitō

effugiō, ere, fugiō, fugitārus, escape.
ego, mei, I.
egredior, gredi, gressus sum, march out.
egregiēō, remarkably, excellently.
eiciō, ere, īeciō, jetecus, thrust out;
sē ēicere, rush forth.
ejus modi, of that kind (§ 323).
elātus, perf. pass. participle of efferō.
elēctus, a, um, chosen, picked.
ēmittō, ere, misī, missus, hurl, discharge.
emō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus, buy.
ēnāscor, ē, nātus sum, grow out.
enim, for; cannot begin a sentence.
eō, adv., thither, to that place.
eō, īre, īvi (ii), itum, go, march,
(§ 280).
eōdem, to the same place.
eques, itis, m., horsemanship; in pl., cavalry, horsemens.
equester, tris, trē, equestrian; cavalry (as adj.).
equitātus, īsī, m., cavalry.
equus, ī, m., horse.
errō, 1, err, be mistaken.
eruptō, ēonis, f., sally.
Esuvii, orum, m. pl., the Esuvii, a Gallic tribe.
et, and; et... et, both... and;
as adv., also, even.
etiam, also; even.
ēventus, īsī, m., outcome, vicissitude.
ēvertō, ere, ti, sus, overturn, destroy.
ex, prep. w. abl., out of; see ē.
exagitō, 1, harass.
exanimātus, a, um, breathless.
exaudiō, īre, īvi, ītus, hear; hear plainly.
excedō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, leave;
depart from.
excitō, 1, stir up, rouse.
excursiō

excursiō, ōnis, f., sally.
exeō, ire, ii, itūrus, go forth, go out.
exercitō, 1, train, practise.
exercitus, ūs, m., army.
exiguitās, ātis, f., scantiness.
exiguus, a, um, small, scanty.
eximius, a, um, extraordinary.
existiō, 1, think, consider.
exitiūm, ī (īi), n., destruction.
exiūs, ūs, m., exit, passage.
exerẹrtus, a, um, unencumbered, light-armed; easy.
expellī, ere, pulsus, drive out, banish.
experior, īrī, pertus sum, try, test.
explōrator, āris, m., scout.
explōrō, 1, examine, discover, find out.
expecūnō, 1, take by storm.
exsistō, ere, stiti, arise.
exspectō, 1, expect, await.
exstruō, ere, strūxi, strūctus, build, throw up.
extrā, prep. w. acc., outside, beyond.
exstrēmus, a, um, extreme, outermost; end of.
facile, easily.
facilis, e, easy.
facinus, inoris, n., crime, deed.
faciō, ere, feci, factus, make, do, execute; pass. irreg. (§ 275).
faciōnās, ōnis, f., faction.
facultōs, tātis, f., supply.
fallō, ere, fefellī, deceive, disappoint, balk.
falsus, a, um, false, mistaken.
fāma, ae, f., reputation, report.
fasēgātus, a, um, sloping.
fēlix, gen. fēlicis, fortunate, happy.
ferāx, gen. ferācis, fertile.
fērē, almost, about, practically.
fērō, ferre, tuli, litus, bear, carry.

furor

bring; lift, raise; lend (of help); say.
fertilītās, ātis, f., fertility.
ferus, a, um, wild, savage, fierce.
fīdēs, ei, f., fidelity, loyalty, protection; confidence, allegiance.
fīducia, ae, f., confidence.
filia, ae, f., daughter.
filius, ī (īi), m., son.
finis, is, m., end; boundary; in pl., territory.
finitimus, a, um, neighboring, near; as noun, finitimī, neighbors.
fūō, fierī, factus sum, become, be made; occur, happen; pass. of faciō (§ 275).
firmus, a, um, firm, strong.
flāgitō, 1, demand.
fūmen, inis, n., river.
fore, fut. infin. of sum (§ 163, footnote 2).
fors, fortis, f., chance.
forte, by chance.
fortis, e, brave, valiant.
fortiter, bravely.
fortūna, ae, f., fortune; pl. fortūnae, ārum, f., fortune (possessions).
foxa, ae, f., ditch, trench.
frāter, tris, m., brother.
fremitus, ūs, m., uproar, noise.
frōnus, ntis, f., forehead; front.
frūmentārius, a, um, pertaining to grain; rēs frūmentāria, grain, grain supplies.
frūmentum, ī, n., grain.
frūstrā, adv., in vain.
fuga, ae, f., flight.
fugīō, ere, fugī, fugitūrus, flee, escape from.
fugō, 1, put to flight.
fūmus, ī, m., smoke.
funditor, āris, m., slinger.
fūror, āris, m., frenzy, fury, excitement.
fūrtum
fūrtum, ī, n., thef.

futūrus, a, um, future participle of sum.

Gāius, ī, m., Gaius, a man's name. 
(Abbreviated C.)

Galba, ae, m., Galba, a man's name.
galea, ae, ē, helmet.

Gallicus, a, um, Gallic.

Gallus, ī, m., a Gaul.

Gallia, ae, ē, Gaul.

Genava, ae, ē, Geneva, a town of the Allobroges.

generātīm, by tribes.

gēns, gentis, f., tribe; gens (division of the Roman people).
genus, eris, ē, stock, family, kind.

Germānī, ērum, m. pl., Germans.
gerō, ere, gessī, gestus, carry, wear, carry on, perform; with bellum, to wage; of office, to hold.

Gladius, ī (īī), m., sword.

Gnaeus, ī, m., Gnaeus, a man's name. (Abbreviated Cn.)
grātia, ae, ē, influence.
grātus, a, um, pleasing, welcome; grateful.

gravis, ē, heavy, laden; difficult; severe, serious.

hābēō, ēre, habuī, habitus, have, possess, hold; consider, regard; of a speech, deliver.
hāc, by this way, here.

Hāeduī, ērum, m., Haeduī, a Gallic tribe.

Hāeduus, ī, m., a Haeduian.

Hēlvētī, ērum, m., Hēlvētī, a Celtic tribe.

Hīberna, ērum, n. pl., winter-quarters.

Hīberūs, ī, m., the Hiberus (modern Ebro), a river in Spain.

1. hīc, haec, hōc, pron., this.

imperātūm
imperātūm

2. hīc, adv., here, at this place.

Hīmō, ī, pass the winter.

hiemis, īs, ī, winter.

Hispaniā, ae, ē, Spain.

hodiē, to-day.

homō, minēs, m., man.

honōr, ēris, m., honor.

hōra, ae, ē, hour.

hortor, āri, ētus sum, exhort, urge.

hostis, īs, m., enemy; especially frequent in pl., the enemy.

hūc, hither.

ibi, there, in that place.

Iccius, ī, m., Iccius, a Gaul.

idem, eadem, idem, the same.

identidem, again and again.

idoneus, a, um, suitable, adapted, fit.

Īdūs, ūm, f. pl., the Ides, the 13th of the month, but the 15th of March, May, July, and October.

igitur, therefore, accordingly; now.

(Stands usually after first word in clause.)

ignāvus, a, um, cowardly.

ignis, īs, m., fire.

ignōminia, ae, ē, ignominy, disgrace.

ille, illa, illud, that; that one; he, she, it.

Illyricum, ī, n., Illyricum, a country lying on the eastern shore of the Adriatic Sea.

imber, imbris, m., rain-storm.

immortālis, e, immortal.

impedimentum, ī, n., hindrance; in pl., baggage.

impediō, īre, ūvi (īī), ītus, impede, hinder.

impeditus, a, um, hindered, hampered, embarrassed.

impellō, ere, pulī, pulsus, impel.

imperātor, tōris, m., commander.

imperātūr, ī, n., command.
imperitus
imperitus, a, um, inexperienced.
imperium, i (ii), rule, sway, control, command; order; government.
imperō, 1, command; demand; order; reign; levy.
impetrō, 1, secure one's request.
impetus, ūs, m., onset, attack.
implōrō, 1, entreat.
improvisus, a, um, unexpected; dé improviso, unexpectedly.
in, prep. w. abl., in, on, denoting rest in a place; among; w. acc., into, in, to, against, towards; under.
incendō, ere, cendī, cēnsus, set on fire.
incertus, a, um, uncertain.
incidō, ere, idī, fall upon; befall; occur; fall in with.
incipīō, ere, cēpi, ceptus, begin.
incipiō, 1, set in motion, quicken; urge on, encourage.
incilō, ere, colūi, cultus, inhabit, dwell.
incolumis, e, unharmed, uninjured.
incolumitas, itis, f., safety, protection.
incōmitus, a, um, unprepared; dē incōmitō, unexpectedly.
incommodum, i, n., disaster.
incrēdibilis, e, incredible.
incrēpitā, 1, blame, chide; mock, taunt.
incursus, ēs, m., onset.
incīsō, 1, accuse, find fault with.
inde, thence, then.
indignitās, ātis, f., indignity, insult.
indilīgenter, carelessly.
indolēs, is, f., nature; character.
indācō, ere, dūxī, duxōs, lead in; draw in; draw; cover.
induō, ere, ui, útus, put on.
inēō, ire, ētus, enter upon; begin;
cōnsilium inōre, form a plan ($ 280).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>interceō</td>
<td>to intervene, between; lie between, intervene.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intercipio</td>
<td>to intercept.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intercēdo</td>
<td>between; place between, plant between.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intercēnda</td>
<td>lead in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intercedō</td>
<td>to intercede, intervene.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interest</td>
<td>concern, imper., from intersum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interes</td>
<td>to interest, impers., it concerns.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intervalle</td>
<td>in the meanwhile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interes</td>
<td>to interest, imper., it concerns.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interesum</td>
<td>to be present at; interest, imper., it concerns.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intermissio</td>
<td>to interrupt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interscindo</td>
<td>to tear down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intersum</td>
<td>to be present at; interest, impers., it concerns.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>itaque</td>
<td>accordingly, and so.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iter</td>
<td>journey, march; way; iter facere, march; travel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>item</td>
<td>likewise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>itemum</td>
<td>again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jaceo</td>
<td>to lie, recline.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jacto</td>
<td>to hurl, throw; throw up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jam</td>
<td>already, now.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Janiculum</td>
<td>the hill Janiculum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jubeo</td>
<td>to order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>justicia</td>
<td>justice.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>justus</td>
<td>just.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jubes, jūris</td>
<td>right, power; law, code.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jūsum</td>
<td>oath.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jūrando</td>
<td>on the west of Switzerland.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jūrō</td>
<td>to swear, take oath.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>juxta</td>
<td>near by.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>juxta</td>
<td>near by.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kalendae</td>
<td>Kalendars (first of the month).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L.</td>
<td>abbreviation of Lūcius, Lucius, a man's name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Labiēnus</td>
<td>Labienus, a famous lieutenant of Caesar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>labor</td>
<td>toil; suffer; in battle, be hard pressed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>labōro</td>
<td>lake.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lascō</td>
<td>to harass.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lascito</td>
<td>to harass.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>latus</td>
<td>lake.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>latus</td>
<td>lake.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lapis</td>
<td>stone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lassitudo</td>
<td>weariness.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
lateō
lateō, ēre, ui, lurk.
lātitūdō, īnis, f., breadth; in lātitūdinem, sidewise.
Latobrigi, ērum, m., pl., the Lato-brigi, an ancient tribe.
lātus, a, um, broad, wide.
latus, eris, n., side, flank.
laudō, 1, praise.
laus, laudis, f., praise.
laxō, 1, loosen, open up.
lēgātiō, īnis, f., embassy.
lēgātus, ēris, m., lieutenant; envoy.
legiō, īnis, f., legion.
legiōnārius, a, um, legionary, belonging to the legion.
Lemannus, ī, m., (Lake) Lemannus; the modern Lake Geneva.
lēniter, gently.
Lentulus, ī, m., Lentulus, a man's name.
levis, e, light.
levitās, ātis, f., lightness, instability.
lex, lēgis, f., law.
liber, libera, liberum, free.
liberātī, generously.
liberī, ērum (um), m. pl., children (free born).
liberō, 1, free; acquit.
libertās, tātis, f., liberty.
licit, imperī, it is permitted (§ 287).
Lingōnēs, um, pl., the Lingones, a Gallic tribe.
lingua, ae, f., tongue; language.
linter, tris, f., skiff.
littera, ae, f., a letter (of the alphabet); pl. litterae, ārum, letter, epistle.
lītus, oris, n., shore.
locus, ī, m.; pl., loca, ērum, n., place; family.
longō, adv., far.
longus, a, um, long.
loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, speak.

maritimus
Lūcius, ī (ii), m., Lucius, a man's name.
lūna, ae, f., moon.
lūx, lūcis, f., light; primā lūce, at daybreak.
lūxurīa, ae, f., luxury, self-indulgence.
M., abbreviation for Marcus, ī, m., Marcus, a man's name.
māchinātiō, īnis, f., contrivance, engine.
magis, more, rather, comp. of magnopere.
magistrātus, ās, m., magistrate, ruler.
magnitūdō, īnis, f., size, greatness.
magnopere, greatly, earnestly (§ 109).
magnus, a, um, large, great.
major, larger, greater, comp. of magnus; major nātū, elder (lit. greater as to birth); majōrēs, um, m. (sc. nātū), elders; ancestors.
male, adv., badly, ill (§ 109).
maleficium, ī, n., wrong-doing.
mālō, malle, mālūi, prefer (§ 289).
malus, a, um, bad.
mandātum, ī, n., command, order.
mandō, 1, assign, commit, consign, betake.
maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, remain.
manipulus, ī, m., (military company), maniple.
mānsuētūdō, īnis, f., gentleness, leniency.
manus, īs, f., hand; in military sense, band, force.
Mārcellus, ī, m., Marcellus, a man's name.
mare, is, n., sea.
maritimus, a, um, of the sea, maritime.
GENERAL LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

Massilia
Massilia, ae, f., Marseilles.

máter, tris, f., mother.
mátruró, I, hasten.
maximē, especially, sup. of magnopere (§ 109).
maximus, a, um, greatest, superl. of magnus.
medius, a, um, middle, the middle of.
melior, ius, better; comp. of bonus.
memini, isse, remember (§ 281).
memoria, ae, f., memory, recollection.
Menapii, orum, m. pl., the Menapii, a Belgian tribe.
mēns, mentis, f., mind.
mercātor, oris, m., trader.
meritum, i, n., merit, desert.
Messalla, ae, m., Messalla, a man's name.
meus, a, um, my.
miles, itis, m., soldier.
militāris, e, military.
mille, indecl., thousand (§ 114, 4); pl., mīla, ium.
minimē, adv., least (§ 109).
minimus, a, um, superl. of parvus.
minor, less, comp. of parvus; minor
nātū, younger.
minus, adv., less; si minus, if not.
miser, a, um, wretched, unfortunate.
misericordia, ae, f., pity, mercy.
mittō, ere, ivi (ii), itus, send, hurl.
mōbilitās, ātis, f., fickleness.
modo, only; just, just now; as conj., provided that.
modus, i, m., manner, kind.
moenia, ium, n. pl., walls (of a city).
molestē, with trouble, with vexation.
mollīo, ire, īvi, ītus, soften.
moneō, īre, monūi, monitus, advise, warn.
mōns, montis, m., mountain, hill.
mora, ae, f., delay.

né
Morini, örum, m. pl., the Morini, a Belgian tribe.
moror, ārī, morātus sum, delay; tarry, linger.
mors, mortis, f., death.
mōs, mōris, m., custom; pl., mōrēs, character.
Mosa, ae, m., the river Meuse.
mōtus, ūs, m., revolt.
movēo, īre, movī, mōtus, move; touch.
muliēr, mulieris, f., woman.
multitūdō, īnis, f, multitude; number.
multō, by much, abl. of multum.
multus, a, um, much; pl., many.
mūnimentum, ī, n., fortification, defence.
mūniō, īre, īvī (ii), ītus, fortify, protect.
mūniō, opinis, f., fortification.
mūnus, eris, n., reward.
mūrus, ī, m., wall.

nām, for.
Nammēius, ī, m., an Helvetian.
nanciscor, ī, nactus sum, procure, find.
nāscor, ī, natus sum, be born, rise.
nātiō, opinis, f., nation, tribe.
nātūra, ae, f., nature, character.
(nātus, ūs), m., only in the abl. sing., nātū, as to birth (in phrases expressing age).
nauta, ae, m., sailor.
nāvālis, e, naval.
nāvicula, ae, f., small boat.
nāvis, is, f., ship, boat.
nāvō, ī, do with energy; operam
nāvāre, act vigorously, or manfully.
nē, not; lest; that . . . not; from
(after verbs of hindering); nē . . . quidem, not even, emphatic
negative, emphasizing the expression placed between ne and quidem.

-ne, enclitic interrog. particle, asking for information.

nec (neque), nor; and not.

necessarius, a, um, necessary, urgent.

necesse est, impers., it is necessary.

necessitas, atis, f., need, necessity.

neglego, ere, lexii, lectus, neglect.

negotium, i (ii), n., business; trouble, difficulty.

nemo, m., defective noun, no one; acc. neminem, dat. neminem; other cases lacking.

neque (ne), nor, and not.

nequiquam, in vain, without reason.

Nervii, orum, m. pl., the Nervii, a Belgian tribe.

nem, and not.

neuter, tra, trum, neither (§ 83).

nihil, indecl., nothing; as adv., not, no.

nihil, abl., by nothing; nihilominus, none the less.

nisi, unless, except.

nobiltas, tatiss, f., nobility; rank.

neces, ere, nocui, nociturius, injure, harm.

noctu, by night.

nocturnus, a, um, at night.

noli, nolle, nolui, be unwilling (§ 269).

nomen, inis, n., name.

nominatim, adv., by name; item by item.

nominoo, 1, name, mention.

non, not; non solum (nnon modo) . . . sed etiam, not only . . .

but also.

nondum, not yet.
occāsus
occāsus, ūs, m., setting; occāsus sōlis, sunset.
occidō, ere, occidī, occīsus, kill.
occultus, a, um, hidden; in occultō, in hiding.
occupō, 1, take possession of, seize; occupy.
occurrō, ere, currī, currum, run to meet; meet.
Ōceanus, ī, m., the ocean.
ocūtus, a, um, eighth; octāvus decimus, eighteenth.
Octodūrus, ī, m., Octodurus, a village of the Veragri.
octō, indecl., eight.
oculus, i, m., eye.
ōdī, òdissē, hate (§ 281).
offerō, ferre, obtuli, oblitus, offer; suggest; sē offerre, volunteer.
officium, i (ii), n., duty.
ommittō, ere, mīsī, missus, omit, overlook, neglect.
omnīnō, adv., in all, altogether; with negatives, at all.
omnis, e, all, every.
onerārius, a, um, burden-bearing; nāvēs onerāriæ, transports.
onus, eris, n., weight.
operā, ae, f., assistance, effort.
opiniō, ōnis, f., opinion, expectation; reputation.
opportet, ēre, oportuit, it behooves, ought (§ 287).
oppidānus, a, um, of the town; as noun, oppidāni, townspeople.
oppidum, ī, n., town, walled town.
opportūnus, a, um, fit, opportune, suitable.
opprimō, ere, pressī, pressus, overwhelm.
oppugnātō, ōnis, f., assault, method of assault.
oppugnō, 1, attack, assault.
ops, opis, f. (nom. sing. is not used), power, help; in pl., resources, assistance.
optimē, sup. of bene (§ 109).
optimus, a, um, sup. of bonus (§ 101).
optō, 1, desire.
opus, indecl., n., need; opus est, it is necessary; there is need.
opus, eris, n., work; fortification.
ōra, ae, f., coast.
ōrātō, ōnis, f., speech, words.
ōrātor, ōris, m., orator; envoy.
ōrdō, inis, m., rank; order, arrangement.
orior, orīri, ortus sum, arise.
ora, ae, f., coast.
oratio, onis, f., speech, words.
orātor, ōris, m., orator; envoy.
osta, omnis, e, all, every.
onus, eris, n., weight.
opera, ae, f., assistance, effort.
opiniō, ōnis, f., opinion, expectation; reputation.
opportet, ēre, oportuit, it behooves, ought (§ 287).
opposidunā, a, um, of the town; as noun, oppidāni, townspeople.
opposidum, ī, n., town, walled town.
opportūnus, a, um, fit, opportune, suitable.
opprimō, ere, pressī, pressus, overwhelm.
opponēt, ēre, oppositum, it is opposed, opposed to; opposidum, a, um, of the town; as noun, opposidāni, townspeople.
opposidum, ī, n., town, walled town.
opportūnus, a, um, fit, opportune, suitable.
onerārius, a, um, burden-bearing; nāvēs onerāriæ, transports.
omnis, e, all, every.
parvulus
parvulus, a, um, slight, insignificant, trifling.
parvus, a, um, small.

passus, ūs, m., pace (five feet).

patefaciō, ere, fēci, factus, open.

pateō, ère, ui, lie open, extend.

pater, patris, m., father, ancestor.

patior, i, passus sum, suffer; allow.

patria, ae, f., country, fatherland.

patrius, a, um, ancestral.

pauci, ae, a, few, used only in pl.

paucitās, ātis, f., fewness, small number.

paulātim, little by little, gradually.

paulisper, for a little while.

paulo, abl., by a little.

paululum, a very little, slightly.

pāx, ācis, f., peace.

pecuniā, ae, f., money.

pedes, itis, m., foot-soldier; in pl., infantry.

pedester, tris, tre, infantry (as adj.).

Pēdius, i, m., Pēdius, a Roman lieutenant.

peditātus, ūs, m., infantry.

pellis, is, f., skin, hide.

pellō, ere, pepuli, pulsus, drive; drive out, banish; rout, defeat.

per, prep. w. acc., through, over, among; by means of, through the instrumentality of; on account of; during.

perdō, ere, dīdi, dītus, lose.

perdūcō, ere, dúxi, ductus, conduct; extend, construct.

perferō, ferre, tulĭ, lātus, carry through, convey, endure (§ 204).

perficiō, ere, fēci, factus, accomplish.

perfringō, ere, frōgī, frāctus, break through, destroy.

perfuga, ae, m., deserter.

pericilditor, 1, make trial.

periculōsus, a, um, dangerous.

periculum, i, n., danger.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pōnō</th>
<th>prō</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pōnō, ere, posui, positus, put, place, set up, establish; castra pōnere, pitch a camp.</td>
<td>praeferō, ferre, tuli, látus, choose, prefer (§ 264); put before; se praeferre, outdo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pōns, pontis, m., bridge.</td>
<td>praeficiō, ere, fécī, fectus, put in charge, place in command. (§ 306, 3).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>populor, 1, lay waste, devastate.</td>
<td>praemittō, ere, mīsī,missus, send ahead, send in advance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>populus, i, m., people.</td>
<td>praemium, i (ii), n., reward.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>porrēctus, a, um, extended.</td>
<td>praescribō, ere, scripsī, scriptus, prescribe, direct.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>porta, ae, f., gate.</td>
<td>praesēns, praesentis, present, pres. participle of praesum, used as adj.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>portō, 1, carry, bring.</td>
<td>praesertim, especially.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>portus, ūs, m., harbor.</td>
<td>praestidium, i (ii), garrison, guard; safety, security, protection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>posēō, ere, poposēi, demand.</td>
<td>praestō, āre, ītūs, ītus, surpass, exceed; perform, show, exhibit; praestat, it is better.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possessiō,onis, f., possession.</td>
<td>praesēs, esse, fui, futūrus, be in charge of (§ 252; 306, 3).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>posseō, ĕre, poposei, demand.</td>
<td>praeter, prep. w. ace., except, besides.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possēō, ĕre, poposēi, demand.</td>
<td>praetereā, besides.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possēō, ĕre, poposēi, demand.</td>
<td>praetor, ōris, m., praetor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possessio,onis, f., possession.</td>
<td>premō, ere, pressi, pressus, press, crowd; pass., be hard pressed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possēō, ĕre, poposēi, demand.</td>
<td>primipilus, i, m., primipilus (first centurion of the first cohort).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possessio,onis, f., possession.</td>
<td>primō, first, at first, firstly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possēō, ĕre, poposēi, demand.</td>
<td>primum, first, for the first time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possessio,onis, f., possession.</td>
<td>primus, a, um, first, foremost, leading; superl. of comp. prior (§ 102, 1).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potēns, entis, pres. participle of possum, used as adj., powerful.</td>
<td>princeps, ōpis, m., chief; leader, instigator; as adj., first.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potēns, entis, pres. participle of possum, used as adj., powerful.</td>
<td>prior, us, former, before (another); priōrēs, those in advance (102, 1).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potēns, entis, pres. participle of possum, used as adj., powerful.</td>
<td>pristinus, a, um, pristine, former.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potēns, entis, pres. participle of possum, used as adj., powerful.</td>
<td>priōquam, before.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potēns, entis, pres. participle of possum, used as adj., powerful.</td>
<td>privātus, a, um, private; as noun, privātus, i, m., a private citizen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potēns, entis, pres. participle of possum, used as adj., powerful.</td>
<td>prō, prep. w. abl., before, in front</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
probō

of; for, instead of; in behalf of; in accordance with.

probō, 1, approve.

prōcēō, ere, cessi, cessūrus, advance; go ahead.

procul, far, far off, at a distance.

prōcumbō, ere, cubuī, lie down.

prōcurrō, 1, care for, have charge of.

prōcurrō, ere, cucurrī, cursum, run forward.

proelius, i (ii), m., battle.

profectio,onis, f., departure.

proficisciō, i, profectus sum, set out.

profāgō, 1, put to rout.

profugō, ere, fugī, fugitūrus, flee, escape; flee for refuge.

prōgnātus, a, um, descended.

prōgrederiō, i, gressus sum, advance, go forward.

prohibēō, ēre, ītus, keep away, keep off; keep from, prevent.

prōiciō, ere, ieci, iectus, throw forward; cast; throw away, abandon.

prōmoveō, ēre, movī, mōtus, move forward.

prōpe, nearly, almost.

properō, 1, hasten.

propinquitās, ātīs, f., nearness; kinship, blood relationship.

propinquus, a, um, near.

propōnō, ēre, posuī, positus, place in front; set up.

propōter, prep. w. acc., on account of.

propōterē, on that account, therefore; propōterē quod, because.

propugnō, 1, defend oneself.

prasēquor, ĭ, secūtus sum, follow; address.

praspectus, ūs, m., view.

prōtinus, forthwith, straightway.

prōturbō, 1, throw into confusion.

prōvideō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus, provide, take care; foresee.

quīdam

prüvinca, ae, f., province.

prüvolō, 1, fly forward.

proximē, superl. of prope (§ 109), recently.

proximus, a, um, nearest, next (§ 102, 1).

prūdentia, ae, f., foresight, prudence; wisdom.

publius, a, um, public.

Pūlius, ī (īī), m., Publius, a man’s name.

puer, i, m., boy.

pugna, ae, f., battle.

pugnō, 1, fight.

pulcher, ehra, chrum, beautiful.

pulsus, perf. pass. participle of pellō.

putō, 1, think.

quā, adv., where.

quadrungentiā, ae, a, four hundred.

quaeō, ere, quaesivi, quaeuitū, seek; inquire.

quālis, e, rel., as; such as; interrog., of what sort?

1. quam, how?
2. quam, than.

quamquam, although.

quamvis, though, although.

quandō, interrog., when.

quantum, how much; as much as.

quantus, a, um, how great; as great as.

quärē, rel. and interrog., wherefore.

quārtus, a, um, fourth.

quasi, as if.

quattuor, indecl., four.

-que, enclitic conj., and.

queror, ĭ, questus sum, complain.

quī, quae, quod, who, which.

quia, conj., because.

quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, whoever, whatever.

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, a certain (§ 146).
quidem

quidem, indeed, even; of course; ne... quidem, not even.

quin, that not; by which not, but that, that, from.

quinam, quaeamam, quodnam, what, pray!

quindeci.m, indecl., fifteen.
quingenti, ae, a, five hundred.
quinquaginta, indecl., fifty.
quince, indecl., five.
quintus, a, um, fifth.
Quintus, i, m., Quintus, a man's name.

quis, quid, interr. pron. who, what?

quis, qua (quaec), quid, indef. pron. and adj., any, any one (§ 146).

quisquam, quaequam, quidquam (quicquam), any, any one (§ 146).

quisque, quaeque, quidque (quicque), each (§ 146).

quies, quiquid, whatever.
quivis, quaevis, quodvis, any you wish, any whatever.

1. quō, rel. and interr. adv., whither, to which.

2. quō, conj., in order that.

quod, because, on the ground that.

quōminus, from (after verbs of hindering).

quondam, formerly, once upon a time.

quoniam, conj., inasmuch as.

 quoque, also, always placed after the word it modifies.

ramus, i, m., branch.

ratio, ōnis, i., reckoning, account; theory; reason; consideration; plan.
ratis, is, f., raft.
Rauraci, ōrum, m. pl., the Rauraci, an ancient tribe.
recens, gen. recentis, recent.

recipio, ere, cēpī, ceptus, take back,
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>renúntio</td>
<td>bring back word, report.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>repellō</td>
<td>drive back, repel, repulse.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>repente</td>
<td>suddenly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>repentinus</td>
<td>sudden.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reperī</td>
<td>discover, find, secure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>res, rei, f.</td>
<td>thing, affair, circumstance; pl. fortunes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rescindō</td>
<td>tear down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resistō</td>
<td>resist (§ 306, 2).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>respicio</td>
<td>look back.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>respondō</td>
<td>answer, reply.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>responsum</td>
<td>answer, reply.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēs</td>
<td>thing, affair, circumstance; f. state, republic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>respitō</td>
<td>reject.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>restituō</td>
<td>restore.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retineō</td>
<td>retain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>revertor</td>
<td>return; perf., revertī.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>revocō</td>
<td>recall.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>réx, rēgis, m.</td>
<td>king.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhēnus, i, m.</td>
<td>Rhine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhodanus, i, m.</td>
<td>Rhone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ripa, ae, f.</td>
<td>bank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rogō, 1, ask.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rōma, ae, f.</td>
<td>Rome.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rōmānus, a, um, Roman; as noun, a Roman.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rūbus, i, m.</td>
<td>bramble, bramble-bush.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rūmor, oris, m.</td>
<td>rumor, report.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rūpēs, is, f.</td>
<td>cliff.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rūrsus</td>
<td>again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sabīnus, i, m</td>
<td>Sabinus, a lieutenant of Caesar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sabis, is, m.</td>
<td>a Belgian river, the modern Sambre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saepe</td>
<td>often.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saepēs, is, f.</td>
<td>hedge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sagittārius, i, m.</td>
<td>archer, Bowman.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salūs, lūtīs, f.</td>
<td>safety, welfare.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>servītus</td>
<td>pack, bundle, load, baggage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>satis, adv. and noun</td>
<td>sufficiently; enough.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>satisfāciō</td>
<td>make amends.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saxon, i, n.</td>
<td>rock.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scientia, ae, f.</td>
<td>knowledge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sciō, ire, scīvi, scītus, know.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scribō, ere, scripsī, scriptus, write; of laws, draw up.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scūtum, i, n.</td>
<td>shield.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sē, reflexive, he; himself, herself (§ 123).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sectiō, ōnis, f.</td>
<td>boot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>secundus, a, um, second; favorable.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>secundum, prep. w. acc., along.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sed, but.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sēdecim, indecl., sixteen.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sēdēs, is, f.</td>
<td>seat, abode, dwelling-place.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>semper, always.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>senātor, tōris, m.</td>
<td>senator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>senātus, ūs, m.</td>
<td>senate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>senex, senis, m.</td>
<td>old man; as adj., old.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Senōnēs, um, m.</td>
<td>the Senones, a Gallic tribe.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sententia, ae, f.</td>
<td>opinion, sentiment, decision.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sentīō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, feel, perceive.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sentis, is, f.</td>
<td>briar, briar-bush.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sēparātim, separately.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>septem, indecl., seven.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>septimus, a, um, seventh.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>septingenti, ae, a, seven hundred.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sepultūra, ae, f.</td>
<td>burial.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sēquani, ōrum, m. pl.</td>
<td>Sequani, a Gallic tribe.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sequor, ī, secūtus sum, follow; seek.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sermō, ōnis, m.</td>
<td>conversation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>servitūs, ūtis, f.</td>
<td>servitude, bondage.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
servō

servō, 1, save; preserve, maintain.
servus, i, m., slave.
esesenti, ae, a, six hundred.
sex, indecl., six.
sexāgintā, indecl., sixty.
sectenti, ae, a, six hundred.
Sextius, i, m., Sextius, a man’s name.
sextus, a, um., sixth; sextus decimus, sixteenth.
si, if; si minus, if not.
sic, so (of manner).
signifer, i, m., standard-bearer.
significātiō, onis, f., sign, signal.
significō, 1, show; mean.
signum, i, n., signal; standard.
silentium, i (ii), n., silence.
silva, ae, f., forest.
silvestris, e, 1000ded.
simul, together, at the same time.
simul ac (atque), as soon as.
sine, conj., but if.
sine, prep. w. abl., without.
singulāris, e, single, singular, special, exceptional.
singuli, ae, a, one at a time, each, separate.
sinister, tra, trum, left, left hand.
socius, i (ii), m., ally, comrade.
sōl, is, m., sun.
sollicitō, 1, excite, arouse; tamper with.
sōlum, only; nōn sōlum ... sed etiam, not only ... but also.
sōlus, a, um, alone, only (§ 83).
solvō, ere, solvi, solūtus, loose; of ships, unmoor; nāvēs solvere, set sail.
sonus, i, m., sound.
spatium, i (ii), n., space, distance; time.
speciēs, ēi, f., sight.
speculātor, ēris, m., spy.
spērō, 1, hope, hope for; governs the acc.

summus

spēs, spei, f., hope.
spiritus, ūs, m., breath; arrogance.
sonte (abl. of obsolete spōns), of one’s own accord; voluntarily.
statim, at once, immediately.
statīo, onis, f., station, post; picket.
statua, ae, f., statue.
statuō, ere, uī, ėtūs, decide.
statūrā, ae, f., stature.
streplitus, ūs, m., noise, uproar.
studēō, ēre, uī, be eager, pay attention to.
studium, i, n., zeal, eagerness, enthusiasm.
stultitia, ae, f., folly.
sub, prep. w. acc. and abl., under; towards.
subdūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus, withdraw, lead away; snatch away.
subeō, fre, iī, ētūrus, approach (§ 280).
subītō, suddenly.
sublevō, 1, relieve.
submitto, ere, misi, missus, send, despatch.
subruo, ere, utus, undermine.
subsequor, i, secūtus sum, follow, follow after.
subsidium, i (ii), n., assistance; pl. reinforcements.
succēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, approach, draw near; follow; succeed.
succendō, ere, cendi, cēnus, set fire to.
Suessiones, um, m. pl., the Suessiones, a Belgian tribe.
sui, self, oneself (§ 123).
sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, be.
summa, ae, f., sum, total, supreme control, management.
summus, highest, greatest, top of, top (§ 373); sup. of superus (§ 102, 2).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sümō</th>
<th>transigō</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sümō, ere, sümpsi, sümpius, take, assume.</td>
<td>temptō, 1, attempt, try, make trial of.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superior, us, higher, upper, above; former; comp. of superus (§ 102, 2).</td>
<td>tempus, oris, n., time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superō, 1, overcome, defeat, surpass; be superior.</td>
<td>tendō, ere, tetendi, tentus, stretch; stretch out; stretch one’s course; go.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supersedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessum, refrain from.</td>
<td>teneō, ēre, ui, hold.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supersum, esse, fūi, remain, be over, survive.</td>
<td>tener, a, um, tender, young.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supplex, icis, m., supplicant; also used adjectively.</td>
<td>tergum, ī, n., back; ā tergō, from behind.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supplicātiō, ēnis, f., thanksgiving, supplicium, ī (īī), n., torture, punishment.</td>
<td>terra, ae, f., land, a land, country.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suprā, prep. w. acc. and adv., above. As adv., previously.</td>
<td>terror, āris, m., terror, fear.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suprēmus, a, um, superl. of superus (§ 102, 2).</td>
<td>tertius, a, um, third.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suspicō, ēnis, f., suspicion.</td>
<td>testūdō, inis, f., tortoise; a military formation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sustentō, 1, hold out, sustain, endure.</td>
<td>Teutoni, ērum, m. pl, the Teutons, a Germanic tribe.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sustineō, ēre, ui, withstand; hold out.</td>
<td>Themistocles, īs, m., Themistocles, an Athenian statesman.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sustulī, perf. ind. act. of tollō.</td>
<td>timō, ēre, ui, fear.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suus, a, um, his; her; its; their.</td>
<td>timor, āris, m., fear.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T., abbreviation of Titus. tabula, ae, f., tablet; pl. īsts.</td>
<td>Titūrus, ī, m., Titurus, a man’s name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talentum, ī, n., a talent (about $1200). Titus, ī, m., Titus, a man’s name.</td>
<td>Tobō, ī, m., unformed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tabula, ae, f., tablet; pl. īsts. tollō, ere, sustuli, sublātus, raise, pick up; take, take away.</td>
<td>tollō, ere, sustuli, sublātus, raise, pick up; take, take away.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talentum, ī, n., a talent (about $1200). tormentum, ī, n., engine, for hurling missiles.</td>
<td>tormentum, ī, n., engine, for hurling missiles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tālis, e, such. tot, indecl., so many.</td>
<td>tot, indecl., so many.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tam, so (of degree). totidem, indecl., the same number, just as many.</td>
<td>totidem, indecl., the same number, just as many.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tamen, nevertheless, yet. totus, a, um, whole, entire (§ 83).</td>
<td>totus, a, um, whole, entire (§ 83).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tantulus, ā, um, so slight. trābs, is, f., beam.</td>
<td>tantulus, ā, um, so slight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tantum (n. of tantus), so much. trādō, ere, trādīdī, trāditus, hand over.</td>
<td>tantum (n. of tantus), so much.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tantus, a, um, so great. trādūcō, ere, dūxiō, ductus, lead across; lead through.</td>
<td>tantus, a, um, so great.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tardō, 1, retard, check. trānō, ī, swim across.</td>
<td>tardō, 1, retard, check.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tardus, a, um, slow, listless. trāns, prep. with acc., across.</td>
<td>tardus, a, um, slow, listless.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegimentum, ī, n., covering. trānseō, īre, īī, itus, cross; cross over.</td>
<td>tegimentum, ī, n., covering.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tēlum, ī, n., javelin. trānsigō, īre, īgis, āctus, pass, spend.</td>
<td>tēlum, ī, n., javelin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>temere, rashly.</td>
<td>templum, ī, n., temple.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
transportō

transportō, 1, transport, set across.
trānsversus, a, um, crosswise, cross.
trectēntī, ae, a, three hundred.
trēs, tria, three (§ 114, 2).
Trēverī, ōrum, m. pl., Treveri, a tribe of Belgians.
tribūnus, ī, m., tribune, officer in a Roman legion; also a tribune of the plebs.
trīdūm, ī, n., three days.
triplex, ico, triple.
tū, tui, thou, you (§ 122).
tuba, ae, i., trumpet.
tuciōr, ĕri, guard, watch.
Tulingī, ōrum, m. pl., the Tulingi, an ancient tribe.
tum, then, at that time.
tumulus, ī, m., mound.
tumultus, ūs, m., tumult; uprising. tunc, then.
Turonī, ōrum, m. pl., the Turoni, a Gallic tribe.
turpis, e, base.
turpitūdō,  īnas, f., shame, disgrace.
turris, is, f., tower.
tūtus, a, um, safe, secure.
tuus, a, um, thy, your (§ 124).

ubi, rel. and interr. adv., where; when.
Ubii, ōrum, m., Ubii, a German tribe.
ulciscor, ī, ultus sum, avenge.
ūllus, a, um, any (§ 83).
ulterior, us, farther, more distant (§ 102).
ūnā, together.
unde, whence.
ūndecimus, a, um, eleventh.
ūndēvigintī, indecl., nineteen.
undique, from all parts or sides.
universus, a, um, all, complete.
ūnus, a, um, one, alone (§ 83).
urbs, urbīs, ī, city.

versor

urgeō, ere, ursī, press, hard press.
Usipetēs, ūm, m., Usipetes, a German tribe.
ūisque, even.
ūsus, ūs, m., experience; use, service, advantage.
ūt, as; that, in order that; with verbs of fearing, that not.
uter, utra, utrum, int. adj., which (of two)?
uterque, utraque, utrumque, gen.
ūtiusque (cf. § 83), each (of two); in pl. both (of two parties).
ūtī, see ut.
ūtinam, affirmative particle (§ 393)
ūtor, ī, īsus sum, use (§ 344, 1).
ūtrum, whether.
vacuus, a, um, vacant, empty.
vadum, ī, n., ford, shallow water.
valeō, ere, ī, valitūrus, be strong; avail, prevail.
vallis, vallīs, f., valley.
vallum, ī, n., wall, breastworks; intrenchment.
varius, a, um, various.
vāstō, l, lay waste.
Veliocasses, ūm, m. pl., the Veliocasses, a Belgian tribe.
vēndō, ere, dīdī, dītus, sell.
Venelli, ōrum, m. pl., Venelli, a Gallic tribe.
Venetī, ōrum, m. pl., Veneti, a Gallic tribe.
veniō, ere, vēni, ventum, come.
ventus, ī, m., wind.
verbūm, ī, n., word.
vereor, ĕri, itus sum, fear.
vergō, ere, extend.
vēro, indeed, but.
versor, āri, ātus sum, move about; be engaged in; be involved in; stay, remain.
verte>
vertō, ere, vertī, versus, turn;
terga vertere, flee.
Verucloetius, ī, Verucloetius, an
Helvetian envoy.
vesper, ī, m., evening.
vester, vestra, vestrum, your.
veterānus, a, um, veteran.
vētō, āre, ui, itus, forbid.
vētus, gen. veteris, old, long-stand-
ing.
vēxillum, ī, n., banner, flag.
vexō, l, harass, annoy; ravage.
via, ae, f., way, road.
victor, āris, m., victor, as adj., vic-
torious.
victōria, ae, f., victory.
vīcus, i, m., village.
videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus, see; in pass.,
be seen; seem, appear; seem best.
vigilia, ae, f., watch (of the night).
vigintī, indecl., twenty.
vimen, īnis, n., osier, willow shoot.
vincō, ere, viciē, victus, conquer.
vīnea, ae, f., vineyard, trellis; shed,
used to protect soldiers in siege
operations.

vīnum, ī, n., wine.
vir, ī, m., man.
vīrēs, pl. of vis.
Viromandui, ērum, m. pl., the
Viromandui, a Belgian tribe.
virtūs, tūtis, f., valor, virtue.
vis, vis, f. (acc. vim), violence;
number; vim facere, do violence,
violate; pl. vīrēs, iūm, strength.
vīsus, perf. pass. participle of
videō.
vīta, ae, f., life.
vitō, l, avoid.
vix, scarcely, with difficulty.
vocō, l, call, summon; name.
volō, velle, volūī, wish, be willing,
§ 269).
voluntās, ātis, f., wish, desire, will-
ingness, consent.
vōx, vocis, f., voice, word, exclama-
tion.
vulgō, generally.
vulnerō, wound.
vulnus, eris, n., wound.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>ENGLISH–LATIN VOCABULARY.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>abandon</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>abandon</strong>, déserō, ere, serū, sertus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(able), be able, possum, posse, potui.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>absent</strong>, be absent, absūm, esse, afūl, afutūrūs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(account), on account of, propter, <em>prep. w. ace.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>accede</strong>, acceūsō, 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>adjudge</strong>, judicio, 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>advance</strong>, prōgredior, I, gressus sum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>advice</strong>, consilium, I (ii), <em>n.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>after</strong> (<em>adv.</em>), post.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>after</strong> (<em>conj.</em>), postquam.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>afterwards</strong>, postea.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>against</strong>, contra, <em>prep. w. ace.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all, omnis, e.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>almost, paene.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>already, jam.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>although, though, quamquam; quamvis; cum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and, et; <em>-que</em> (<em>enclitic</em>); atque.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>announce</strong>, nūntiō, 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>another, alius, a, ud.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>answer</strong>, respondeō, ēre, spondī, spōnsum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>any</strong>, ūllus, a, um (<em>§ 83</em>).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anybody, anyone, anything, quīsquam, quaequam, quidquam; quis, quid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>any you please</strong>, quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet or quodlibet (<em>§ 146</em>).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>be able</strong>, possum, posse, potui, (<em>§ 253</em>).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
beast of burden
beast of burden, jumentum, i, n.

beautiful, pulcher, chra, chrum.
because, quod; quia; cum (§ 407, 2).
become, fio, fleri, factus sum.
before (prep. and adv.), ante.
before (conj.), antequam, priusquam.
begin, coepi, coepisse (§ 281.)

behoove, it behooves, oportet, ere,

oportuit (§ 287).

better, melius.

between, inter, prep. w. acc.

blame, culpó, ēre, āvi, ātus,

boat, návis, is, f.

booty, praeda, ae, f.

born, be born, nascor, I, natus sum.

born, natus, a, um.

both, each, uterque, utraque, utrumque.

boundary, finis, is, m.

boy, puer, eri, m.

brave, fortis, e.

bravely, fortiter; from the adj., fortis, e.

bridge, pons, pontis, m.

brief, brevis, e.

bring, aferō, ferre, attulī, allātus.

bring about, efficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus.

bring against, inerō, ferre, tuli, illātus, with dat. of indirect obj. (§ 306, 3).

bring back, referō, ferre, rettulī, retlātus

Britain, Britannia, ae, f.

brother, frater, tris, m.

by (of personal agent), ā, ab, prep. w. abl.

Caesar, Caesar, is, m.

call (name), appellō, 1.

call (summon), vocō, 1.

courageously
call together, convocō, 1.
camp, castra, ōrum, n.
can (be able), possum, posse, potui.
captive, captivus, i, m.
capture, capiō, ere, cēpī, captus.

cause, causa, ae, f.
cavalry, equitēs, um, m. pl. of eques, itis; of cavalry, equestrian.
equester, tris, tre.

cease, dēsistō, ere, dēstītī.
certain, certain one, quidam, quae-
dam, quiddam, or quoddam (146).

charge, be in charge, praesum, esse, fui, construed with dat. (§ 306, 2).

charge, put in charge, praecipient, ere, fēcī, fectus, construed with dat. (§ 306, 3).

children, liberi, ōrum (um), m.

choose, dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus.

circumstance, rēs, ei, f.
citizen, fellow-citizen, civis, is, m.
city, urbs, urbīs, f.

coast, ēra, ae, f.

cohort, cohors, rtis, f.

collect, colligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus.

come, veniō, ire, vēni, ventum.

command (noun), mandatum, i, n.

command (verb), imperō, 1.

commander, imperātor, ōris, m.

common, communis, e.

compel, cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus.

concern, it concerns, interest, esse, fuit.

concerning, dē, prep. w. abl.

confer, colloquor, i, locūtus sum.

conference, colloquium, i (ii), n.

consul, cōnsul, is, m.

consult (with), dēliberō, 1.

contend, dīmīcō, 1.

contented, contentus, a, um.


council, concilium, i (ii), n.
country, native country, patria, ae, f.
courageously, audāctēs, from adj.
audāx, ācis.
### ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cowardly</td>
<td>cowardly, ignavus, a, um.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>endure, perfero, ferre, tulī, lātus.</td>
<td>endure, perfero, ferre, tulī, lātus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enemy (in military sense), hostis, i, m.; (collectively), hostēs, iun, m.</td>
<td>enemy (in military sense), hostis, i, m.; (collectively), hostēs, iun, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enough, satis (§ 322).</td>
<td>enough, satis (§ 322).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expect, exspecto, i.</td>
<td>expect, exspecto, i.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exhaust, wear out, conficio, ere, feci, fectus.</td>
<td>exhaust, wear out, conficio, ere, feci, fectus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>family (stock), genus, eris, n.</td>
<td>family (stock), genus, eris, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>farmer, agricola, ael, m.</td>
<td>farmer, agricola, ael, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>favor, beneficium, i (ii), n.</td>
<td>favor, beneficium, i (ii), n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fear (noun), timor, ōris, m.</td>
<td>fear (noun), timor, ōris, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fear (verb), timeō, erē, ui.</td>
<td>fear (verb), timeō, erē, ui.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fellow-citizen, civis, is, m.</td>
<td>fellow-citizen, civis, is, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fertile, ferax, acis.</td>
<td>fertile, ferax, acis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>field, ager, agrī, m.</td>
<td>field, ager, agrī, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fierce, acer ; from the adj., acer, acris, acre.</td>
<td>fierce, acer ; from the adj., acer, acris, acre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fifteen, qūndecim.</td>
<td>fifteen, qūndecim.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fight, pugnō, 1.</td>
<td>fight, pugnō, 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fill up, compleō, ere, evī, ētus.</td>
<td>fill up, compleō, ere, evī, ētus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find (by searching), reperio, ire, repperī, repertus.</td>
<td>find (by searching), reperio, ire, repperī, repertus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find (come upon), inveniō, ire, vēni, ventus.</td>
<td>find (come upon), inveniō, ire, vēni, ventus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>first, adj., primus, a, um.</td>
<td>first, adj., primus, a, um.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>first, adv., primum.</td>
<td>first, adv., primum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fit out, equip, instruō, ere, uxi, uteus.</td>
<td>fit out, equip, instruō, ere, uxi, uteus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>five, quinque.</td>
<td>five, quinque.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flee</td>
<td>flee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>Latin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fleet</strong></td>
<td><strong>how many</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fleet, classis, is, f.</td>
<td>greatest (of qualities), summus, a, um.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(following), on the following day, postridie.</td>
<td>greatly, magnopere.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fond, fond of, cupidus, a, um.</td>
<td>(ground), on the ground that, quod.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foot, pes, pedis, m.</td>
<td>guard, watch, tueor, eri.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forage, pabulum, i, n.</td>
<td>Haedu, Haedu, orum, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ford, vadum, i, n.</td>
<td>happen, be done, fiō, fieri, factus sum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forest, silva, ae, f.</td>
<td>happen, it happens, it befalls, impersonal, accidit, ere, accidit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget, obliviscor, t, oblttus sum.</td>
<td>happy, beatus, a, um.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortiina, ae, f.</td>
<td>harass, vexō, ēre, ēvi, ātus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>four, quattuor.</td>
<td>harbor, portus, ūs, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>free (adj.), liber, a, um.</td>
<td>harm, detrimentum, i, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>free, set free, liberō, l.</td>
<td>hate, ōdi, ōdisse (§ 281).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>friend, amicus, i, m.</td>
<td>have, habēo, ēre, ul, ītus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>friendship, amicitia, ae, f.</td>
<td>he, is (ea, id) (§ 137).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>from, a, ab.</td>
<td>hear, hear of, audīō, īre, īvi, ītus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>from, out of, ē, ex.</td>
<td>heart, courage, animus, i, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>from (= of), with verbs of demanding, etc., ā, ab.</td>
<td>help, auxiliō, ī (ī), n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>from, after verbs of hindering, etc., quōminus, nē.</td>
<td>Helvetiī, Helvētil, ōrum, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>front (adj.), primus, a, um.</td>
<td>her, suus, a, um (§ 124, 1), reflexive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galba, Galba, ae, m.</td>
<td>here, hic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>garrison, praesidium, i (ī), n.</td>
<td>high, altus, a, um.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gate, porta, ae, f.</td>
<td>highest (of qualities), summus, a, um.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gaul (a Gaul), Gallus, i, m.</td>
<td>hill, collis, is, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gaul (the country), Gallia, ae, f.</td>
<td>himself, herself, etc., sui, sibi, se, reflexive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>general, dux, duels, m.</td>
<td>hinder, impede, impediō, īre, īvi, ītus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geneva, Genava, ae, f.</td>
<td>his, suus, a, um, reflexive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>German (a German), Germanus, i, m.</td>
<td>(home), at home, domi (§ 366, 2).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Germany, Germania, ae, f.</td>
<td>home (to one's home), domum (§ 302, b).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get ready (trans.), parō, ī.</td>
<td>honor, honor, ēris, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give, dō, dare, dedī, datus.</td>
<td>hope, spēs, cf, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glad, laetus, a, um.</td>
<td>horseman, eques, itis, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go, ēo, ire, īvi (īi), ītum (§ 280).</td>
<td>hostage, obses, idis, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go around, circumeō, ire, īvi (īi), ītus (§ 280).</td>
<td>house, domus, ūs, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go away, abeo, ire, ī, īturus.</td>
<td>how much, followed by gen. of the whole (§ 322), quantum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good, bonus, a, um.</td>
<td>how many, quot, indecl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>great, magnus, a, um (§ 101).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
hundred

hundred, centum.
hurry, contendō, ere, tendī, tendum.

I, ego, mel.
if, si, conj.
in, in, prep. w. abl.
inasmuch as, quoniam (§ 407, 1).
increase (trans.), augeō, ēre, auxī, auctus.
infantry, peditēs, um, m.
inform, certīorem faciō, ere, fēcī, factus.
be informed, certior fīō, fierī, factus sum.
inhabitant, incola, ae, m.
injure, noceō, ere, utīrūs, with the dat. (§ 306, 2).
into, in, prep. w. acc.
island, insula, ae, f.
Italy, Italia, ae, f.
javelin, tēlum, I, n.
join (battle), committō, ere, misī, missus.

keep away, ward off, prohibeō, ēre, utī, itus.
kill, interficiō, ere, fēcī, factus.
kind, genus, generis, n.
king, rēx, rēgis, m.
know, scīō, īre, īvī, itus.
lack, be lacking, désūm, désesse, défui (§ 252).
land, ager, agrī, m.
land (opposed to water), terra, ae, f.
large, magnus, a, um (§ 101).
last, last part of, limiting a noun, extremūs, a, um (§ 373).
law, statute, lēx, lēgis, f.
lead, dúcō, ēre, dúxi, ductus.
lead, lead out, lead away, dē dúcō, ēre, dúxi, ductus.

move

lead across, trādūcō, ere, dúxi, duc-tus.
leader, dux, ducis, m.
leave, relinquo, ēre, líquī, lūctus.
legion, legiō, ōnis, f.
lead (help), ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus.
less, minus.
least, nē.
letter (an epistle), litterae, ārum, f.
liberty, libertās, ātis, f.
lieutenant, légātus, ārum, m.
life, vita, ae, f.
like, similīs, e.
line of battle, aciēs, el, J-
little (a little), paulum.
long (adj.), longus, a, um.
long (adv.), diū.
love, amō, āre, āvī, ātus.
loyalty, fīdēs, el, f.

make, faciō, ēre, fēcī, factus.
make (somebody or something safe, bold, clear, etc.), reddō, ēre, red-diō, reddītus.
man, homō, inis, m., the general term; man as opposed to woman, or as a complimentary designation, vir, vīri, m.
many, multi, ae, a; very many, complārēs, a; gen. complārium.
march (noun), iter, itineris, n.
march (verb), iter facere, lit., make a march.
march forth, egredior, I, gressus sum.
messenger, nūntius, I (ii), m.
mile, mile passus, lit., thousand paces; pl., mīlia passuum.
money, pecūnia, ae, f.
more (adv.), magis.
more (substantive), plūs, plūris, n.
most, plērique, aeque, aque.
mountain, mōns, montis, m.
move, moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus.
**English-Latin Vocabulary.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>much</td>
<td>much, multus, a, um.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my</td>
<td>meus, a, um.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>nomen, inis, a.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>narrow</td>
<td>angustus, a, um.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>naval</td>
<td>navalis, e.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>necessary</td>
<td>it is necessary, necesse est.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>need</td>
<td>there is need, opus est (§ 344, 2).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neglect</td>
<td>neglego, ere, lexi, lectus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>next</td>
<td>proximus, a, um (§ 102, 1; 314).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no</td>
<td>nullus, a, um.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no one</td>
<td>nemo, dat. nemin, acc. neminem; gen. and abl. wanting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noble</td>
<td>nobiles, e.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not</td>
<td>non, ne. (not), is not? does not? etc., none (§ 288, 2).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not even</td>
<td>ne . . . quidem, with the emphatic word between.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not yet</td>
<td>nonum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nothing</td>
<td>nihil, indeci.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>now</td>
<td>(at the present time), nunc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>number</td>
<td>numerus, i, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of, concern</td>
<td>de, prep. with abl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>often</td>
<td>saepe.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on, in</td>
<td>prep. with abl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on all sides</td>
<td>undique, adv.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one</td>
<td>unus, a, um.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one . . . another, alius . . . alius; the one . . . the other, alter . . . alter.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>onset</td>
<td>impetus, Us, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opinion</td>
<td>sententia, ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opportunity</td>
<td>occasio, omen, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>order</td>
<td>levit, impero, 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>order, command</td>
<td>jubeo, ere, jussi, jussus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>other</td>
<td>alius, a, ud.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>other, the other, alter, a, um.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>others</td>
<td>the others, ceteri, ae, a.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English Word</th>
<th>Latin Word</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>recollection</td>
<td>recollection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ought</td>
<td>debeo, ere, ul, itus; it behooves, oportet, ere, oportuit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>our</td>
<td>our own, noster, tra, trum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overcome</td>
<td>supero, are, avi, atus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pace</td>
<td>(= 5 feet), passus, us, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part</td>
<td>pars, partis, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peace</td>
<td>pax, paesis, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>people</td>
<td>populus, i, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perish</td>
<td>intereo, ire, il, iturus (§ 280).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>permit</td>
<td>permittor, ere, misi, misus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>persuade</td>
<td>persuadeo, ere, suasi, suasum (§ 306, 2).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pity</td>
<td>misericordia, ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pity, it excites pity</td>
<td>miseret, misere, miseruit, impersonal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>place</td>
<td>locus, i, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>place in charge</td>
<td>in command over, praeficio, ere, feci, fectus, with the dat. of indirect obj.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plan</td>
<td>consilium, i, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plunder</td>
<td>diripio, ere, ripul, reptus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pompey</td>
<td>Pompejus, Pompei, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>power</td>
<td>potestas, atis, f.; denotes the power that is vested in an official.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praise</td>
<td>laudor, 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prefer</td>
<td>malo, malle, malul (§ 269).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present</td>
<td>give, dono, 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present, be present</td>
<td>adsum, esse, ful, futurus (§ 252).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prevail</td>
<td>valeo, are, valui, iturus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put in charge</td>
<td>praeficio, ere, feci, fectus (§ 306, 3).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quickly</td>
<td>celeriter, adv., from the adj., celer, eris, ere.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rampart</td>
<td>agger, eris, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ravage</td>
<td>vexo, 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>receive</td>
<td>accipio, ere, cepi, ceptus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recollection</td>
<td>memoria, ae, f.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
regret

regret, it causes regret, paenitet, ere, uit, impersonal (§ 287; 330).

remain, maneo, ere, mansi, mansurus.

remaining, reliquus, a, um.

remember, bear in mind, memini, i (§ 329).

remind, admoneo, ere, uI, itus:

reply, respondeo, ere, respondi, respondus.

report (noun), fama, ae, f.

report (verb), nuntio, 1.

reputation, fama, ae, f.

request, seek, peto, ere, petivi (ii), itus.

resist, resisto, ere, restitI, with dat. (§ 306, 2).

rest, the rest, ceteri, ae, a.

retard, tardo, 1.

return, revertor, i, redeo, ire, ii, itum.

revolt, motus, iis, m.

reward, praemium, I (ii), n.

Rhone, Rhénus, I, m.

river, flumen, inis, n.

Roman, Römäus, a, um; a Roman, Römäus, I, m.

Rome, Röma, ae, f.

safety, salus, ãtis, f.

sake, for the sake, causa, with gen.; the gen. always precedes.

same, idem, eadem, idem (§ 138); at the same time, simul.

save, servo, 1.

say, dico, ere, dixi, dictus.

scarcely, vix.

sea, mare, is, n.

see, video, ere, vidis, visus.

seem, videor, ærvi, visus sum.

seize, occupo, 1.

self, oneself, sui, sibI, sè.

self (i.e. I myself, you yourself, etc.), ipse, in apposition with the subject or object.

sword

sell, vendo, ere, vendidi, venditus.

senate, senatus, ãs, m.

send, mittó, ere, misi, missus.

Sequani, Séquani, ãrum, m.

set out, proficiscor, I, fectus sum.

she, ea, f. of is (§ 137).

ship, návis, is, f.

(sides) on all, undique.

since (casual), cum.

six, sex, indecl.

slave, servus, I, m.

small, parvus, a, um (§ 101).

so (of degree), tam.

so, thus (of manner), ita, sic.

so great, tantus, a, urn.

so many, tot, indecl.

soldier, miles, itis, m.

some, something, aliquis, aliqua, aliquid or aliquod.

some . . . others, aliI . . . alii.

son, filius, I, m.

Spain, Hispânia, ae, f.

spare, paro, ere, peperci, pars火炬 (§ 306, 2).

speak, loquor, I, locitus sum; dicö, ere, dixi, dictus.

standard, signum, I, n.

state, cívitas, ãtis, f.

station, collocó, 1.

stone, lapis, idis, m.

such, tális, e.

suddenly, subitö.

suffer, patior, I, passus sum.

suitable, idoneus, a, um.

summer, aestâs, ãtis, f.

summon, voco, 1.

(superior), be superior to, superö, 1.

surpass, superos, 1.

surrender (oneself), dedö, ere, dedidi, deditus.

surround, circumvenio, ere, vénL

ventus.

suspicion, suspicio, onis, f.

sword, gladius, I (ii), m.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.</strong></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>take, seize, capió, ere, cēpi, captus.</td>
<td>who?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take by storm, expugnō, l.</td>
<td>tribe, gēns, gentis, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talent, talentum, i, a.</td>
<td>tribune, tribūnus, l, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tarry, moror, ārī, ātus sum.</td>
<td>troops, cōpiae, ārum, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teach, docēō, ere, ui, doctus.</td>
<td>trust, cōnfidō, ere, fisus sum, semidep. (§ 306, 2).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell, dico, ere, dixī, dictus.</td>
<td>try, make trial, temptō, l.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ten, decem, indecl.</td>
<td>twenty, vigintī.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terrify, perterreō, ere, ut, territus.</td>
<td>two, duo, duae, duo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than, quam, conj.; see also § 339.</td>
<td>two hundred, ducentī, ae, a.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that, is, ea, id; ille, illa, illud.</td>
<td>under, sub., prep. w. acc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that of yours, iste, ista, istud.</td>
<td>unharmed, incolumis, e.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that, rel. pron., quī, quae, quod.</td>
<td>until, dum, dōnec, quod.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that, in order that, ut; quī quae, quod w. the subj.; w. comp., quō.</td>
<td>unwilling, invitūs, a, um; be unwilling, nōlo, nōlle, nōlui.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that, on the ground that, quod.</td>
<td>us, nōs, nostrum, nostri, pl. of ego.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that, lest, with verbs of fearing, nē.</td>
<td>Cf. § 377, 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that not, in order that not, nē.</td>
<td>use, ūtor, l, ūsus sum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that not, with verbs of fearing, ut.</td>
<td>valor, virtūs, ātis, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that not, ut nōn.</td>
<td>Veneti, Veneti, ōrum, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>their, their own, suus, a, um.</td>
<td>very many, complūrēs, a; gen. complūrium.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they, see he, she, etc.</td>
<td>victory, victōria, ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thing, rēs, rel., f.</td>
<td>village, vicius, l, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>this, hic, haec, hēc.</td>
<td>virtue, virtūs, ātis, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>those, as antecedent of rel., el, eae, ea.</td>
<td>voice, vox, vocis, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thou, tū, tul.</td>
<td>wage, gerō, ere, gessī, gestus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>though, quamquam, quamvis, etsī, cum.</td>
<td>wait, wait for, exspectō, l.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thousand, mīlle; pl., milia, ium, a.</td>
<td>war, bellum, l, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>three, trēs, trīa.</td>
<td>watch, vigilia, ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>three hundred, trecentī, ae, a.</td>
<td>welcome, gratūs, a, um.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>till, dum, dōnec, conj.</td>
<td>what? quis (quī), quae, quid (quod).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time, tempus, oris, n.</td>
<td>whatever, quisquī, quidquīd.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to, ad, prep. w. acc.</td>
<td>when? quando.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(top) top of, with a noun, summus, a, um (§ 373).</td>
<td>when, rel., ubi, ut, cum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>torture, supplicium, l (iī), n.</td>
<td>where? ubi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>touch, moveō, ere, mōvi, mōtus.</td>
<td>where, rel., ubi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tower, turris, is, f.</td>
<td>whether, num, -ne.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>town, oppidum, l, n.</td>
<td>whither, quō.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tree, arbor, oris, f.</td>
<td>while, conj., dum (§ 418).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trench, fossa, ac, f.</td>
<td>who? quis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>Latin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>who, which</td>
<td>qui, quae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>whole</td>
<td>totus, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>winter</td>
<td>hiberna, orum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wish</td>
<td>volo, velle, volui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with</td>
<td>cum, cum. abl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>withdraw</td>
<td>discedo, ere, cessi, cessurus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>without</td>
<td>sine, prep. w. abl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>withstand</td>
<td>sustineo, ere, ut, tentus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>word</td>
<td>verbum, i, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>work (a work)</td>
<td>opus, eris, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>worthy</td>
<td>dignus, a, um.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wound (noun)</td>
<td>vulnus, eris, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wound (verb)</td>
<td>vulnero, are, atus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>scribo, ere, scriptus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>year</td>
<td>annus, i, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(yet)</td>
<td>not yet, nondum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>tu, tui.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>young man</td>
<td>adulescens, entis, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>your</td>
<td>your own, tuus, a, um; vester, tra, trum.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Rules of Syntax p 201.